Department of Accounting

An accounting system is essential for industrial and commercial activities and for international trade and finance. Knowledge and techniques of Accounting are the foundation of industrial and commercial systems. They are also important to those who are engaged in analysing and planning the work which is necessary for the promotion of economic development and prosperity of society. The objective of this Department is to train competent accountants to meet the large demand from industry and commerce. The four-year programme will include the principles and theories of Accounting as well as the application of this knowledge to practice. The degree programme is designed to equip students with the essential soft skills in addition to the professional accounting skills necessary to function effectively in management positions within profit-seeking and non-profit organizations.

Graduates of the degree programme need to have successfully completed a minimum of 123 credits, consisting of required and elective courses in both the business and liberal arts areas. The course lists for the honours degree programme appear as follows:
Bachelor of Commerce (Hons.) in Accounting

Number of Credits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Year (Total number of credits required: 37-40)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language Requirements

Chi. 101-2  First Year Chinese ..................................................... 4 4
Chi. 131-2  Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates) # ........ 1 1
Eng. 111-2  English Usage ........................................................... 3 3

# Exemption is allowed from Chi. 131-2 based on a special examination during admission.

Departmental Requirements

Acct. 101-2  Introductory Accounting ............................................. 3 3
Bus. 111-2  Quantitative Methods ................................................ 3 3
Econ. 101-2  Principles of Economics ............................................ 3 3
Soc. 150  Critical Thinking ........................................................ (3) 3

Electives

Hist. 180  Introduction to the Study of the PRC ......................... - 3
Law 110  Introduction to Law .................................................. 3 -
P.E. 103  Physical Education .................................................. 2 -
P.E. 104  Physical Education .................................................. - 2
Phil. 103  Introduction to Philosophy .................................... (3) 3

Total number of credits for First Year courses

Language Requirements: 16
Departmental Requirements: 21
Electives: 0-3
Total: 37-40
### Second Year (Total number of credits required: 33-36)

#### Language Requirement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 211-2</td>
<td>English Writing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Departmental Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 201-2</td>
<td>Intermediate Financial Accounting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 210</td>
<td>Cost and Management Accounting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Business</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 200</td>
<td>Business Organization and Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 251-2</td>
<td>Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comp. 101</td>
<td>Introduction to Information Technology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comp. 211</td>
<td>Computer Applications in Accounting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 250</td>
<td>Business Law</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Electives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comp. 204</td>
<td>Web Page Development</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 100</td>
<td>Introductory Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AND: All electives listed under First Year**

#### Total number of credits for Second Year courses

- **Language Requirement:** 6
- **Departmental Requirements:** 26
- **Electives:** 1-4
- **Total:** 33-36

### Third Year (Total number of credits required: 27-30)

#### Departmental Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 300</td>
<td>Advanced Financial Accounting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 310</td>
<td>Auditing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 320</td>
<td>Advanced Management Accounting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 330</td>
<td>Accounting Information Systems</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 340</td>
<td>Financial Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 233</td>
<td>Principles of Marketing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 303A</td>
<td>Business Communication</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 331-2</td>
<td>Company Law</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Electives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 360</td>
<td>Systems Analysis and Design</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 410</td>
<td>Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 320</td>
<td>International Trade</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 323</td>
<td>The Economy of Contemporary China</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 347</td>
<td>Introduction to Financial Derivatives</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 444</td>
<td>Financial Institutions in Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 220</td>
<td>The Modern World</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total number of credits for Third Year courses**

- Departmental Requirements: 27
- Electives: 0-3
- Total: 27-30

**Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 26-32)**

**Departmental Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 420</td>
<td>Hong Kong Taxation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 440</td>
<td>Accounting for Management Control and Decision-Making</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 450</td>
<td>Professional Ethics</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 460</td>
<td>Business Strategy</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Accounting Electives**: choose **one** group from the three groups (2 courses) plus **one** course from the remaining four courses

**Group A**
- Acct. 490  Accounting System in China ........................................ 3
- Acct. 495  China Taxation .......................................................... - 3

**Group B**
- Acct. 350  Accounting Theory ...................................................... - 3
- Acct. 480  International Accounting ........................................... - 3

**Group C**
- Acct. 460  Research Methodologies in Accounting .......................... 3
- Acct. 470  Research Project ......................................................... - 3

**Electives**
- Acct. 410  Advanced Auditing ...................................................... 3
- Acct. 415  Internal Auditing and Control ....................................... 3
- Acct. 425  Advanced Taxation in Hong Kong .................................. - 3
- Acct. 455  Corporate Governance and Compliance .......................... - 3
- Bus. 250  Organizational Behaviour ............................................ 3 (3)
- Bus. 309  Human Resource Management ....................................... 3
- Bus. 409  China Investment .......................................................... - 3
- Bus. 410  Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management ............... 3
- Psy. 309  Industrial and Organizational Psychology ........................ 3

**Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses**

- Departmental Requirements: 11
- Accounting Electives: 9
- Electives: 6-12
- Total: 26-32
Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants (HKICPA)

The Accounting Degree Programme has been successfully accredited by the HKICPA. Graduates of the Accounting Degree programme are eligible to be admitted to the Qualification Programme (QP) and to sit for the Final Professional Examination of the HKICPA. Candidates who have passed the examinations and with at least 3 years' relevant supervised working experience will be qualified as Certified Public Accountants or non-practising members of the HKICPA.

The Association of Chartered Certified Accountants, U.K. (ACCA)

The Association of Chartered Certified Accountants of the United Kingdom has granted exemption from the whole of Parts 1 and 2 (9 papers) of its professional examination to our Accounting Degree graduates.

The Association of International Accountants, U.K. (AIA)

The Association of International Accountants has granted full exemption from all subjects in Foundation Stage and Professional I (12 papers) to our Accounting Degree graduates.

The Chartered Institute of Management Accountants, U.K. (CIMA)

The Chartered Institute of Management Accountants has granted exemption from 8 papers to our Accounting Degree graduates.
Certified Management Accountants Society of British Columbia, Canada (CMA)

Certified Management Accountants Society of British Columbia has granted substantial exemption to the Degree Programme and graduates will only have to take 4 courses, pass the National Entrance Examination and undertake the Strategic Leadership Programme to be qualified.

Certified General Accountants Association of Canada (CGA)

Certified General Accountants Association of Canada has granted substantial exemption to the Degree Programme and graduates will only have to undertake 4 courses that require examinations and 2 course assignments to be qualified.

Certified Management Accountants of Australia (CMA)

Certified Management Accountants of Australia has granted exemption to the Accounting Degree graduates of 16 units out of 18 units in the ICMA Programme.

Hong Kong Institute of Chartered Secretaries (HKICS)

Hong Kong Institute of Chartered Secretaries has granted exemption from 4 papers in its Professional examination to our Accounting Degree graduates.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(BComm DEGREE PROGRAMME)

Acct. 101-2 Introductory Accounting    2 Terms; 6 Credits

This course aims to equip students with a basic understanding of the principles and concepts of accounting; and to develop students' ability to apply them to the preparation of financial statements and related information in order to meet internal and external obligations.

Upon completion of this course, students will be able to:

a) outline the role and principles of financial accounting and reporting;

b) understand the principles and concepts of accounting and their applications;

c) have a thorough grounding in the basic mechanics of accounting;

d) prepare financial statements for sole proprietors, partnerships and corporations.

Acct. 201-2 Intermediate Financial Accounting    2 Terms; 6 Credits

This course is designed to equip students with the ability to prepare and interpret financial statements, to present financial information of limited companies in compliance with Hong Kong's statutory requirements and accounting standards, to understand the conceptual framework of financial reporting and the current developments of accounting standards and practices.
The course consists of the following topics, which are grouped into three main categories:

a) the accounts of limited companies: issue and redemption of share and loan capital; distributable profits; published accounts and disclosure requirements; capital reductions and reorganizations; and business combinations.

b) the accounting treatments of specialized transactions: intangible assets – goodwill and research and development costs; tangible assets – investment properties and inventories; revenue and borrowing costs; and deferred taxation.

c) the analysis and interpretation of financial statements: ratio analysis, cash flow analysis, earnings per share implication; segmental analysis; inter-firm comparison; and share valuation.

**Acct. 210 Cost and Management Accounting**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This is a second-year term course. The aim of management accounting is to provide information to managers for planning, decision-making and control. This includes job/product costing, cost-volume-profit analysis, pricing, make or buy, addition or deletion of a product line, utility of limited resources, inventory management, budgets and standard costing etc.

The course focuses on the design and implementation of a cost management system of an enterprise which is confronted with global competition. Upon completion of this course, students will be able to understand the basic principles, methods and techniques of
cost accounting, analyse cost data for planning and control, and apply marginal and relevant costing for pricing or other short-term decision-making.

The course will emphasize training students’ critical-thinking ability. They will be encouraged to see things from different perspectives, taking into considerations the internal situations and external environments. Tutorials and applications of spreadsheet are used to help students apply theories to problem solving.

**Acct. 300 Advanced Financial Accounting**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with the knowledge in the accounting theory and practice for the preparation of group accounts, group cash flow statements and foreign subsidiaries; and provide students with the knowledge in the accounting theory of profit measurement and capital maintenance in an inflationary period.

Upon completion of this course, students should be able to explain the principles of business combinations and understand the issues involved in preparing group financial statements and foreign subsidiaries, and appreciate the problems of profit measurement and asset valuation in a period of changing prices.

**Acct. 310 Auditing**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to impart students with the knowledge of regulatory requirements and auditing standards and guidelines as set by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and in
applying the auditing procedures to audits of corporate financial statements. The topics include the nature and scope of an audit; the professional and regulatory framework within which the auditor works; the methods for collecting and evaluating audit evidence; the nature of internal controls and evaluation of risk control, the audit of transaction cycles. Students will also learn the different forms of audit reports and how to choose an appropriate one in a given situation.

**Acct. 320 Advanced Management Accounting**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with an in-depth understanding of the principles and methods of modern Management Accounting and an ability to contribute to effective corporate management.

Upon completion of this course, students should be able to understand the role of the management accountant and the main purposes of management accounting; appreciate the features, benefits and limitations of Activity-Based Costing; acquire skills in making what if- analysis in profit planning and budgeting; formulate short- and long-run policies; and understand and apply cost management methods and techniques.

**Acct. 330 Accounting Information Systems**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to help students acquire the necessary understanding and knowledge of information systems (IS). It can help students understand the impact of information technology on
business processes and provide them with the knowledge of the importance of AIS in achieving organizational goals. The course can also provide students with hands-on experience in using spreadsheet, database and accounting softwares. Through the course, students can recognize the design, implementation and evaluation of AIS and broaden their understanding of the issues related to the deployment of AIS in the organization.

**Acct. 340 Financial Management**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with an understanding of the basic skills and concepts required for the study of finance and for their application to financial management; explore the analysis of financial management decision making within firms with an emphasis on the application of theory to practice; and help students understand the relevance of modern financial theory on financial management.

Upon completion of this course, students should be able to:

a) describe the main forms of long-term and short-term finance for companies;

b) appreciate the nature and scope of working capital management;

c) identify the factors which determine the capital structure of companies;

d) explain the impact of dividend policy on corporate valuation;

e) describe the main methods for raising equity finance and for issuing bonds;

f) explain the effects of diversification in risk analysis;
g) describe the features of the Capital Asset Pricing Model; and

h) appreciate the importance of making long-term financial planning and forecasting.

**Acct. 350 Accounting Theory**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to help students understand and consider critically the implications of financial accounting on the fair and efficient operation of the market economy; and to provide a decision usefulness approach to students for understanding the current financial accounting and reporting environment.

Upon completion of this course, students should be able to:

a) recognise the implications of efficient markets on financial reporting and the standard setter as a mediator between the conflicting interests of investors and managers;

b) develop a conceptual framework of accounting objectives;

c) evaluate the qualitative characteristics of accounting information;

d) understand the decision usefulness approach of the reporting requirement; and

e) understand the responsibility and power of the standard setting process.

**Acct. 360 Systems Analysis and Design**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with an in-depth understanding of how information systems support business goals; and to
ensure students can utilize the tools and techniques of systems analysis and design.

Upon completion of this course, students should be able to:
a) identify the role of systems analysts in a typical business organization;
b) explain the principles of managing an information systems project;
c) participate in the implementation, monitoring and maintenance of an information systems solution; and
d) appreciate and apply the tools and techniques used in the systems development process.

**Acct. 410 Advanced Auditing**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to train students in applying the auditing concepts to audits of corporate financial statements, including the audit of transaction cycles and the audit of electronic data processing systems. Students will learn the different forms of reporting and how to choose an appropriate one in a given situation.

At the end of the course, students are expected to know the audit procedures for different transaction cycles, including computer auditing, and how to write an audit report.

**Acct. 415 Internal Auditing and Control**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to develop in students an understanding of the internal control components and the internal audit process. It provides
students with the knowledge of the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) Framework and professional auditing standards. It enables students to apply the knowledge in COSO Framework and internal auditing principles and standards to internal audit and control engagements.

**Acct. 420 Hong Kong Taxation**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to introduce students to the basic principles of taxes as operated under the Hong Kong Inland Revenue Ordinance and its administration. It enables students to explain the scope of charge, basis of assessment and relief of salaries tax, profit tax and property tax. Students will learn the relief under personal assessment and the basis of assessment of stamp duty. Students will also learn the basic tax planning and double taxation arrangements. At the end of the course, students should be able to describe the basic principles of the taxation law and system in Hong Kong. They should also be able to interpret the tax statutes and case law and prepare basic tax computations; and evaluate the effect of recent developments in Hong Kong Tax Law.

**Acct. 425 Advanced Taxation in Hong Kong**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to introduce students to the scope of charge and basis of assessment of profits tax for partnership, club and association, and stamp duty. It also covers the general tax planning, tax investigation, anti-tax avoidance, double taxation agreements,
and tax management. It enables students to explain the basic principles of taxation law and taxation system in Hong Kong and apply the principles to real business situations. At the end of the course, students should be able to apply practical tax knowledge and skills to solving technical tax issues and providing competent tax advice.

**Acct. 440 Accounting for Management Control and Decision-Making**

*1 Term; 3 Credits*

This course is designed to equip students with the tools and skills for making rational business decisions based on accounting knowledge. The course enables students to acquire a comprehensive understanding of the preparation and analysis of accounting data for management control and decision-making purposes. It enables students to understand the implications of modern management accounting concepts and the growth in information technology for management.

Upon completion of this course, students should be able to utilize quantitative tools for management control and decision making; apply management accounting techniques in action-oriented case studies; understand the interface between management accounting and other management functions, and discuss the characteristics of strategic management accounting decisions.

**Acct. 450 Professional Ethics**

*1 Term; 2 Credits*

This course is designed to inculcate in students an awareness and understanding of ethical concepts and issues in the accounting
profession and general business environment. The course can also enable students to handle ethical dilemmas in professional accounting and business settings.

**Acct. 455 Corporate Governance and Compliance**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to develop in students an understanding of the corporate governance system in Hong Kong. It acquaints students with the knowledge of Hong Kong listing rules and compliance; and enable students to apply the knowledge in corporate governance and compliance to evaluating the effectiveness of corporate governance structure and operations within the modern corporate setting in Hong Kong.

**Acct. 460 Research Methodologies in Accounting**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with a basic knowledge in research methods. Students can acquire a basic knowledge for conducting research, including the techniques of collecting, organizing and analysing data and information.

Upon completion of this course, students should be able to identify research topics; design and conduct a research project independently. Students can apply statistical techniques to interpret research results, form a conclusion and communicate the findings.

**Acct. 470 Research Project**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to give students the opportunity to undertake
and develop an independent project in the accounting context.

Upon completion of this course, the students should be able to identify research topics and design a research project independently. Students can conduct an independent project in accounting and business areas by themselves; and communicate the research findings in a report concisely and effectively.

**Acct. 480 International Accounting**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to enable students to explore the environmental determinants of accounting policy across a diverse set of nations. It also examines the international harmonization and focuses on the practical issues of international accounting with particular reference to the Asia-Pacific context.

Upon completion of this course, students should be able to understand comparative accounting and international harmonization of accounting standards and practices in a number of important countries. Students can deal with the complexities of international financial reporting issues and understand management control of multinational enterprises and international performance evaluation.

**Acct. 490 Accounting System in China**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with the knowledge of accounting standards and systems in the PRC and enable them to prepare financial statements in a format required by the Ministry of Finance. The course mainly covers features of Chinese accounting and indicates its differences from Hong Kong and international
After completing the course, students will understand PRC accounting standards and regulations and be able to prepare financial statements subject to disclosure requirements. They will also have acquired the book-keeping skills for tax computation. Students will also learn popular taxation knowledge including corporate and deferred tax, value-added tax, consumption tax and business tax etc.

**Acct. 495 China Taxation**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course aims to provide students with the knowledge in PRC taxation law. Because of time limitation, this course will concentrate on the main categories in which Hong Kong companies and people are frequently involved when doing business in China.

The course will cover the following topics:

1. Principles, structures and administration of the PRC taxation system.
2. The key elements of taxation including scope of charges, tax rates, sources and exemptions of income, deductible expenditures, location of IRD to report to, timing of making tax returns and payments etc.
3. Tax computation and planning of the following types of tax: value-added tax, consumption tax, business tax, import duties and exemptions under CEPA, stamp duties, income tax of local companies, foreign investors and joint-venture businesses, income tax of individuals etc.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(SERVICE COURSES)

Acct. 100 Financial Accounting
1 Term; 3 Credits

This is an introductory accounting course for non-accounting majors. The students are expected to make use of financial accounting information for performance evaluation and management of assets, liabilities and earnings. To achieve these purposes, the students will learn the basic accounting concepts and book-keeping skills, prepare financial statements and carry out financial analysis. Upon completion of this course, students will be able to know the usefulness of accounting information, its cost and benefit; understand the basic accounting concepts and follow them while doing book-keeping and period-end adjustments; write up financial statements of a corporation; and evaluate the economic performance and management efficiency of an organization by financial ratios.

Acct. 200 Cost and Management Accounting
1 Term; 3 Credits

This is a second-year term course for non-accounting majors. The aim of management accounting is to provide information to managers for planning, decision-making and control. This includes job/product costing, cost-volume-profit analysis, pricing, make or buy, addition or deletion of a product line, utility of limited resources, inventory management, budgets and standard costing etc.

This course focuses on the design and implementation of a cost management system of an enterprise which is confronted with
global competition. Upon completion of this course, students will be able to understand the basic principles, methods and techniques of cost accounting, analyse cost data for planning and control, and apply marginal and relevant costing for pricing or other short-term decision-making.

The course will emphasize training students’ critical-thinking ability. They will be encouraged to see things from different perspectives, taking into considerations the internal situations and external environments. Tutorials and applications of spreadsheet are used to help students apply theories to problem solving.

Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of Accounting, please refer to their respective Departments for details.
Department of Business Administration

Bachelor of Business Administration (Hons.)

Aims and Special Features

The Bachelor of Business Administration (Hons.) programme is designed to develop highly-principled graduates, with advanced communication and critical thinking skills, who have a broad understanding of the principles and practices of modern business. Upon completion of the programme, students will be able to apply what they have learned in a variety of business settings. In addition to core competencies in key business disciplines, students will be equipped with communication and information literacy skills, while gaining cross-cultural awareness within the context of preparation for both work and further study. This holistic approach to education underpins Shue Yan University’s longstanding strategy of teaching business within a framework of traditional and modern Chinese cultural values and norms.

The BBA degree is a broad-based programme in which half of the credits are obtained from the study of courses within the Department of Business Administration. The remaining courses cover accounting, economics, law, information and communication technologies and general education. The minimum requirement for graduation is 125 credits. Students may take up to a maximum of 138 credits.

Structure / Concentrations

Required courses in all four years of the programme ensure
that graduates will have a thorough grounding in the core aspects of business and management. Students may also maintain this broad-based approach in their choice of business electives or choose their electives from one of a cluster of courses. There will be five such concentrations (each 12 credits) available: Financial Services & Planning, Marketing, Human Resource Management, China Business Studies and Corporate Governance.

**Suggested Electives for the Financial Services & Planning Concentration**
- Estate and Retirement Planning, Tax Planning, Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management, Insurance

**Suggested Electives for the Marketing Concentration**
- Consumer Behaviour, China Marketing, Advertising Strategies and Design, Public Relations Disciplines

**Suggested Electives for the Human Resource Management Concentration**
- Performance and Compensation Management, Training and Development, Asia Pacific Management Issues, Industrial Relations and Labour Law

**Suggested Electives for the China Business Studies Concentration**
- Asia Pacific Management Issues, China Marketing, The Economy of Contemporary China, China Investment
Suggested Electives for the Corporate Governance Concentration

Contemporary Issues in Corporate Governance, Corporate Secretaryship, Tax Planning, Company Law

Programme Curriculum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Credits</th>
<th>1st Term</th>
<th>2nd Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Year (Total number of credits required: 34-37)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 101-2</td>
<td>First Year Chinese</td>
<td>4 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 131-2</td>
<td>Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates) #</td>
<td>1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 111-2</td>
<td>English Usage</td>
<td>3 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Exemption is allowed from Chi. 131-2 based on an exemption test held in late August.

Departmental Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 100</td>
<td>Financial Accounting</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 120</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Management</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 130</td>
<td>Principles of Marketing</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Economics</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Electives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 110</td>
<td>I.T. Applications in Business</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comp. 204</td>
<td>Web Page Development</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 140</td>
<td>Introduction to Translation</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 100</td>
<td>General Chinese History</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 180</td>
<td>Introduction to the Study of the PRC</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Journalism &amp; Mass Communication</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phil. 103</td>
<td>Introduction to Philosophy</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 100</td>
<td>Introductory Psychology</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 103</td>
<td>Introduction to Anthropology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 107</td>
<td>Understanding Sociology</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 150</td>
<td>Critical Thinking</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AND: Other GE courses may be offered by Contributing Departments

**Total number of credits for First Year courses**

Language Requirements: 16
Departmental Requirements: 12
Electives: 6-9
Total: 34-37

**Second Year (Total number of credits required: 34-38)**

**Language Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 251-2</td>
<td>Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 211-2</td>
<td>English Writing</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Departmental Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 200</td>
<td>Cost and Management Accounting</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 210</td>
<td>Legal Environment of Business</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 220</td>
<td>Quantitative Methods for Business</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 230/360</td>
<td>Consumer Behaviour</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 250</td>
<td>Organizational Behaviour</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 243</td>
<td>Money and Banking</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 252</td>
<td>Globalization and China</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Electives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comp. 204</td>
<td>Web Page Development</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Econ. 213 Introductory Econometrics ......................................... 3
Econ. 233 The Economy of Hong Kong ...................................... - 3
Econ. 320 International Trade .................................................... 3
Jour. 100 Introduction to Journalism & Mass Communication ....... 3 (3)
Jour. 170 Visual Communication ............................................... 3
Jour. 230 Technological Change & Human Communication ....... 3
Law 110 Introduction to Law .................................................... 3
P.E. 103 Physical Education .................................................... 2
P.E. 104 Physical Education .................................................... - 2
Phil. 103 Introduction to Philosophy ......................................... 3 (3)
Psy. 100 Introductory Psychology ............................................. 3 (3)
Soc. 103 Introduction to Anthropology ..................................... 3
Soc. 107 Understanding Sociology ........................................... 3
Soc. 204 Cultures in the Contemporary World ........................... 3
Soc. 208 Hong Kong Society and Culture ................................ 3 (3)
Soc. 255 Philosophy through Film and Literature .................... 3 (3)

AND: Other GE courses may be offered by Contributing Departments

**Total number of credits for Second Year courses**

Language Requirements: 8
Departmental Requirements: 21
Electives: 5-9
Total: 34-38

**Third Year (Total number of credits required: 33-36)**

**Departmental Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 303B</td>
<td>Business Communication</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 304</td>
<td>Marketing Strategy</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 305</td>
<td>Operations Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 306</td>
<td>Supply Chain Management</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 307</td>
<td>Management Information Systems</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 308</td>
<td>Financial Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 309</td>
<td>Human Resource Management</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 320</td>
<td>Business Research</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Electives</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 310</td>
<td>Estate and Retirement Planning</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 318</td>
<td>Game Theory in Business Decision</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 330</td>
<td>China Marketing</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 230/360</td>
<td>Consumer Behaviour</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 404</td>
<td>Performance and Compensation Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 408</td>
<td>Asia Pacific Management Issues</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 410</td>
<td>Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 413</td>
<td>Training and Development</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 418</td>
<td>Contemporary Issues in Corporate Governance</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 423</td>
<td>Seminar in Management</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 424</td>
<td>Issues in Business Practice</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 233</td>
<td>The Economy of Hong Kong</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 244</td>
<td>Managerial Economics</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 320</td>
<td>International Trade</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 323</td>
<td>The Economy of Contemporary China</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 334</td>
<td>International Economics</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 330</td>
<td>International Finance</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 347</td>
<td>Introduction to Financial Derivatives</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 444</td>
<td>Financial Institutions in Hong Kong</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 320</td>
<td>Corporate Secretaryship</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 401</td>
<td>Company Law</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRA. 320</td>
<td>Public Relations Disciplines</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRA. 330</td>
<td>Advertising Strategies and Design</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total number of credits for Third Year courses**

Departmental Requirements: 24
Electives: 9-12
Total: 33-36
Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 24-27)

Departmental Requirements
Bus. 403 Creativity, Innovation and Change ....................... 3 (3)
Bus. 415 Cross Cultural Management .................................. 3
Bus. 417 International Business ........................................... (3) 3
Bus. 420 Advanced Business Report Writing & Communication.. 3 (3)
Bus. 460 Business Strategy .................................................. 3
Bus. 480 Business Ethics & Corporate Social Responsibility ... 3

Electives
Bus. 405 Tax Planning ...................................................... 3
Bus. 406 Insurance ........................................................... 3
Bus. 409 China Investment .................................................. 3
Bus. 440 Industrial Relations and Labour Law ...................... 3
Bus. 450 Honours Project .................................................. 3
Bus. 490 Internship ........................................................... 3 (3)

AND: All electives listed under Third Year

Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses
Departmental Requirements: 18
Electives: 6-9
Total: 24-27
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(BBA DEGREE PROGRAMME)

Bus. 110 I.T. Applications in Business
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course enables students to develop a solid foundation in information technology applications in business with an emphasis on computer systems, Internet and computer security, ethics and privacy. It also enables students to become familiar with Microsoft Window 7 and Microsoft Office 2013, especially Microsoft Power-Point 2013, Microsoft Word 2013 and Microsoft Excel 2013.

Bus. 120 Principles and Practice of Management
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to give students an understanding of the role and functions of a manager and to explain the principles, concepts and techniques used by managers in performing their jobs to achieve the objectives of an organization in an efficient and effective way. There are factors that limit the discretion managers have in discharging their responsibilities. Students will analyse these issues and problems and apply management principles to resolve them.

Bus. 130 Principles of Marketing
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to introduce students to fundamental marketing concepts as well as to marketing practices in the business world. The orientation is primarily with managerial level, and real life
examples will be drawn upon whenever applicable. Students will learn about the role of a marketer and evaluate the related marketing strategies.

**Bus. 210 Legal Environment of Business**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide an essential understanding of legal environment of business to students, and make them aware how legal environments of Hong Kong influence the risk, effectiveness and the profitability of running a business. Through this course, students would develop an understanding on the fundamental legal concepts and issues of business law, and be able to consider business decisions legally. They would be able to address legal problems when they do arise and know how to participate in the solution.

**Bus. 220 Quantitative Methods for Business**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The overall purpose of this course is to change students’ “view of the world” to incorporate statistical thinking. Specifically, this course aims to build up students’ ability to apply quantitative methods to areas in business, and to solve business problem by data collection, analysis, description, interpretation. Students will also review the relevant principles and applications of quantitative methods, and their implementation by necessary statistical tools (e.g. SPSS, Excel) for future research in the work place.

**Bus. 230 / 360 Consumer Behaviour**  
1 Term; 3 Credits
The course aims to equip students with the knowledge of the underlying consumer behavioural concepts and guiding principles. Through this course, students will learn the knowledge and skills required to diagnose consumers’ behaviours and gain an appreciation of the practical issues on how consumer behaviour concepts are applied in formulating different marketing strategies.

**Bus. 250 Organizational Behaviour**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to enhance students’ abilities to use a conceptual and a pragmatic approach of understanding employees’ behaviour in the organization. Moreover, this course also enriches students’ knowledge and skills in diagnosing problems related to organizational behaviours and develop their skills in managing work behaviour of employees at the individual, team and organizational levels.

**Bus. 303B Business Communication**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to introduce the basic concepts of corporate correspondence, presentations, dialogues, verbal discussions and meetings in a business environment; to appreciate the theories of effective communication and major business communication issues; and to develop the strategies and skills in applying communication theories and concepts to business-related situations. There is an emphasis on using English communication in group decision making to determine optimal solutions and to drive collaborative outcomes.
Bus. 304 Marketing Strategy

1 Term; 3 Credits

With the advancement from Bus. 130 Principles of Marketing, this course is designed to introduce to the students the frameworks for analysing the markets, the customers as well as the competitors. By equipping the students with the necessary skills and techniques in facing marketing problems, this course covers the major topics in strategic, tactical and administrative marketing. Business cases are frequently used to illustrate how effective marketing strategies and policies are developed and implemented in real life.

Bus. 305 Operations Management

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with a clear, well-structured and comprehensive understanding of basic concepts and principles of operations management. The course will highlight the very important role of operations management in both service and manufacturing industries, and the role it plays in today’s global business world. Through the illustration of the current issues in the business fields related to operations management, students will understand how to apply what they have learn.
Bus. 306 Supply Chain Management

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with a clear, well-structured and comprehensive understanding of basic concepts and principles of supply chain management. The course will highlight the very important role of supply chain management in creating and maximizing customer values, and the role it plays in today’s global business world. Besides, this course also stresses the benefits and challenges in designing supply chain, constructing global network and coordinating supply chain. Realistic examples and practices will be used extensively throughout the course to illustrate the application of related concepts and principles.

Bus. 307 Management Information Systems

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to make the students knowledgeable about the fundamentals underlying the design, implementation, control, evaluation and strategic use of modern, computer-based information systems for business data processing, office automation, information reporting, decision making and electronic commerce. While some of the efforts will be devoted to hands-on work with business softwares, the major emphasis will be on the managerial and strategic aspects of information technology.

Bus. 308 Financial Management

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course will introduce the basic concepts and the skills of
financial analysis to students. It evaluates the impact of financial decisions on company performance. Besides, financial management strategies will also be discussed. In essence, this course puts emphasis on the application of concepts to problems and relies heavily on numeric calculations.

**Bus. 309 Human Resource Management**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This aim of this course is to provide students with a basic framework of personnel management concepts and techniques focusing on the functions and activities of the personnel managers. As a result, students are able to critically evaluate personnel management techniques and to become problem solvers in the personnel area. They are also capable of undertaking self-appraisal as a manager and appraisal of personnel practices of the organization as a whole.

**Bus. 310 Estate and Retirement Planning**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to help students understand the various issues of private and public employee benefits in Hong Kong. It surveys the different group insurance and retirement plans available for better evaluation in order to effectively assist clients planning for retirement. Secondly, it helps student gain practical understanding of the estate planning process, including the technical issues involved in estate administration and asset distribution; and the course also discusses the role that wills, trusts, gifts, insurance and other estate planning tools play in the process.
Bus. 318 Game Theory in Business Decision

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide theoretical fundamentals, solution techniques and applications of game theory to strategic decision making in a business environment. Topics to be covered include: fundamental game theoretic concepts – classification of games, strategy space and solution concepts; static games – pure strategy Nash equilibrium and mixed strategy Nash equilibrium; business decisions games – oligopolistic quantity and price competition, Stackelberg games and strategic trade policy; dynamic games and differential games; open-loop equilibrium, time inconsistency problems, feedback equilibrium and subgame consistency; business decisions as dynamic games – market share competition and institutional investment.

Bus. 320 Business Research

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course investigates the techniques of the research process as applied to business. The study of business research provides students with the knowledge and skills needed to solve the problems and meet the challenges of a fast-paced decision-making environment. Students would learn about the role business research plays in providing decision makers with timely and objective information to help them make informed decisions in different areas. They would also learn how to conduct a business research systematically and professionally.
Bus. 330 China Marketing  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills of marketing in China as both an academic discipline and a management practice. Special attention is placed on salient approaches and issues that marketers are required to address in order to satisfy customer needs and compete effectively in China’s increasingly globalizing market economy. This course is also designed to facilitate students to take up careers in China marketing or China business in the future.

Bus. 403 Creativity, Innovation and Change  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to give students an excellent grasp of the essential principles underlying creative thinking and problem-solving in the modern business context. Students will be able to promote imaginative, flexible and practical thoughts and actions as required nowadays to be a top manager/executive. Students will learn about how to involve people and share knowledge; how to develop partnerships across organizational boundaries; and the current organizational restructuring and renewal strategies. Students will also discover the tools and techniques for developing ideas, managing innovation, and transforming organizations. Besides, students will explore the approaches to establishing an organizational climate where creativity and innovation can flourish.
Bus. 404 Performance and Compensation Management
1 Term; 3 Credits

This subject examines major principles, concepts and techniques of performance and compensation management. The common pitfalls and effective skills in conducting performance and compensation management are stressed. This subject also takes a pragmatic look at how to reward employees. Designing and administering a compensation system that rewards employees fairly while stimulating them to have outstanding performance are the focuses of this subject.

Bus. 405 Tax Planning
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to introduce students to the basic principles of taxes as operated under the Hong Kong Inland Revenue Ordinance and its administration. The course will enable students to understand the scope of charge, basis of assessment and relief of salaries tax, profits tax and property tax. Besides, students will understand the relief under the personal assessment, and the scope of charge as well as the basis of assessment of stamp duty and estate duty.

Bus. 406 Insurance
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is to provide a basic knowledge of insurance principles and practices with special emphasis on the types of insurance available, and the law and procedures relating to insurance claims. The course is also aimed at providing the future business manager
with the knowledge that will enable them to decide what insurance
to take out and how to proceed with a claim.

Bus. 408 Asia Pacific Management Issues

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with an essential under-
standing of and the current debate on the key management issues
facing the Asia Pacific region from the late 1990s till now. The
course also addresses the topical issues on modern businesses and
management and considers how these issues are developing in the
various systems found across the region.

Bus. 409 China Investment

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide a comprehensive framework and
overall summary of China investment to students. Through this
course, students would develop an understanding on the key con-
cepts, theories and issues of China investment. They would be able
to address various issues, problems and opportunities of China in-
vestment. Throughout this course, real life cases and examples will
be used whenever applicable.

Bus. 410 Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with a solid theoretical
foundation and practical skills essential for portfolio construction, se-
curity analysis and risk management. Topics covered in this course
include the modern portfolio theory, asset pricing models, concepts
of market efficiency, the bond and equity investment management, the principles of derivative securities, and portfolio investment process.

Bus. 413 Training and Development

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide a comprehensive overview of the research, theory and practices of training and development within an organization and to prepare the student as a potential practitioner in a management role, as a specialist working within an organization, or as an external consultant working with a range of organizations.

Bus. 415 Cross Cultural Management

1 Term; 3 Credits

The study of cross cultural management provides students with the exploration of concepts and issues of cross cultural management in a globalization context. Students will learn to identify and address the cultural differences of management practices in selected countries and regions. They would also learn how to manage a culturally diversified workforce in a multi-national corporation.

Bus. 417 International Business

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to introduce to students the fundamental concepts and issues of international business. Students will learn how multinational corporations (MNCs) operate and compete. They will also understand different expansion approaches and strategies in
facing the international environments, and design functional alternatives for operating abroad.

**Bus. 418 Contemporary Issues in Corporate Governance**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

Corporate governance is a scholastic concept in business and legal academia. As the real practice of business organization has been evolving over the years, the rules, regulations and standards of corporate governance have to be constantly updated in order to tackle new problems. In recent years, certain huge international corporate failures due to fraud or malpractice have made the subject of corporate governance a top priority in today’s organizations in the world. Students should be able to grasp the basic concepts of corporate governance by examining key issues of the subject as practised in Hong Kong and other leading regions in the global economy. Through developing an understanding of the importance of corporate governance in management, competitiveness and even sustainability, students will be able to explain and evaluate different academic views from scholarly writings, and develop practical skills from the best practices of leading businesses and their compliance practitioners.

**Bus. 420 Advanced Business Report Writing and Communication**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at developing the necessary business report writing skills for final-year BBA students, using the foundation laid in the pre-requisite course *Business Communication*. This course will focus on developing business document writing skills and strategies
to prepare students for today's business environment and to further develop the necessary high-level skills to communicate effectively with stakeholders in today's global economy. Hong Kong's business demand in the formalities and skills of writing reports and proposals in service industries is increasing which will inevitably affect the practices of other private-sector and public-sector industries. Therefore by bringing in the latest practices from the market, students will be trained with the necessary skills and business sense in developing business proposals and in writing reports.

Bus. 423 Seminar in Management

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to provide students with an opportunity to focus on some important special topics in the field of management. It will include current theories and practices of strategic management, organizational change and development, and the globalization of management. The emphasis will be on developing an "Asian" approach to topics where Western research tends to dominate, and investigating contemporary Asian management practices. Students will also benefit by consolidating their knowledge from previous studies to prepare for a career in the field of management in any organizational context.

Bus. 424 Issues in Business Practice

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with a basic understanding on contemporary issues in business practice with a specific fo-
The course will offer students opportunities to apply their knowledge acquired from their previous studies in the business administration programme to analysing current issues in business practice. This final year course is expected to equip students with the necessary analytical tools in handling challenges in the business world when they start working.

**Bus. 440 Industrial Relations and Labour Law**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to give students a general introduction to various aspects of industrial relations. Based on the foundation laid down in the course *Human Resource Management*, students are provided with basic concepts of labour relations systems, labour laws of Hong Kong, trade union philosophy and structures, collective bargaining, the past and present developments in labour-management relationships and disputes between labour and employers, security and compensation.

**Bus. 450 Honours Project**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with an opportunity to undertake and develop an independent research project in a business or management context.

Upon completion of this course, students should be able to:

a) identify research topics and design a research project independently;

b) understand the techniques of collecting, organizing and analysing data and information;
c) acquire knowledge on and apply statistical techniques to interpreting research results and form a conclusion on the findings; and
d) communicate concisely and effectively the research findings in a report.

**Bus. 460 Business Strategy**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills on how firms formulate, implement and evaluate business strategies. Strategic management concepts, theories, models and techniques are discussed in this course. Students may use all their knowledge in business studies, together with the strategic management techniques learned from this course, to chart future strategic decisions of organizations at different levels of management.

**Bus. 480 Business Ethics and Corporate Social Responsibility**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course provides students with the opportunities of exploring the updated ethical concepts and issues in contemporary global business environments. Students will learn how to identify and address the ethical dilemmas of business and management practices in local and international business contexts. They would also learn how to make and manage ethical decisions in daily business and management practices.

**Bus. 490 Internship**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**
The internship programme is aimed at providing business administration students with practical field experience through a planned and supervised internship arrangement in various commercial settings. It is an integral part of business education and training. Through this educational approach, classroom learning can be sorted out, integrated and put into practice. Moreover, working in the field can provide students with exposure to real-life business practices. It serves as a catalyst in aiding students to become more knowledgeable about the business world on a practical level. Such internship also gives students a taste of the basic elements of management, so that they have an opportunity to acquaint themselves with core management knowledge. Students will be placed in a business organization for at least 100 hours per semester.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES  
(SERVICE COURSES)

Bus. 100 Introduction to Business  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This is an introductory course in business studies. Its aim is to make students be aware of the various functions in a firm, e.g. management, marketing, human resources, accounting and finance. The business environment, as well as the relationship between business, stakeholders, government and society will be discussed. Current cases will be used to illustrate concepts and theories. On completing this course, students will be able to understand the nature and the characteristics of modern business organizations, as well as their management and various operational functions. In addition, they will have developed techniques for analysing and interpreting the causes of complex business problems.

Bus. 111-2 Quantitative Methods  
2 Terms; 6 Credits

This course aims to equip first year students with a solid foundation in quantitative business mathematics and statistical analysis, and the knowledge in various quantitative techniques applicable to accounting and business problems. The course will also enable students to interpret the analytical and statistical results.
Bus. 200 Business Organization and Management
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course aims to help students develop the understanding and competence as managers or aspiring managers. In order to achieve this, it helps students increase the awareness that management is a process and not a series of unique events. For this to happen, students will need to know the fundamental principles and theories developed to explain what managers do, and the ways in which managers have pursued their objectives. More importantly, this course helps students to improve their performance as managers, or to increase the understanding of what a good manager does.

Bus. 233 Principles of Marketing
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course is designed to introduce students to fundamental marketing concepts as well as to marketing practices in the business world. The orientation is primarily with managerial level, and real life examples will be drawn upon whenever applicable. Students will learn about the role of a marketer and evaluate the related marketing strategies.

Bus. 303A Business Communication
1 Term; 3 Credits
The aim of this course is to develop students’ skills in effective business communication. The course will introduce principles of communication and strategies for effective communication, and will improve students’ English skills for oral and written communication.
Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of Business Administration, please refer to their respective Departments for details.
Master of Science in Marketing and Consumer Psychology

The MSc in Marketing and Consumer Psychology is a programme that prepares young professionals from different backgrounds and industries for careers in marketing of products and services for businesses as well as non-profit-organizations.

This is a pioneering programme that not only covers traditional areas in marketing, but also psychological knowledge, and practical skills that are required for career success. The programme is designed to provide with an employment-focused curriculum to give its graduates a career advantage in consumer marketing.

Programme Curriculum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Year (Total number of credits required: 15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core Courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 501 Consumer Psychology ....................................................... 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 502 Marketing Communications and Brand Management .............. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 503 Applications of Psychology to Marketing ............................ 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 531 Research Methods and Design .......................................... 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 532 Marketing Analytics ............................................................ 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Year (Total number of credits required: 15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core Courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 540 Strategic Innovation and Marketing Management .............. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 541-2 Master's Project ................................................................. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elective Courses (choose any 2 out of 5 courses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 521 Digital Marketing and Internet Consumer Behaviour ........... 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The total number of credits required for graduation is 30.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(MSc PROGRAMME)

The programme includes key courses that are designed to provide students with the knowledge and skills they need to develop a successful career in the field of consumer marketing. It consists of three main areas: Core Knowledge, Contemporary Marketing Practices, and Research and Analytical Techniques.

Study Block 1: Core Knowledge

Bus. 501 Consumer Psychology

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to build students’ abilities to evaluate and analyse the key theoretical concepts in consumer psychology and to apply these concepts to solving marketing problems. Students would review the key psychological, social, and cultural factors influencing consumer decisions and develop the basic techniques of understanding consumers’ psychology. Making use of case-analysis, students can develop their analytical skills in applying consumer psychology research in real world settings. Marketing ethics and social responsibility of firms and consumers will be discussed.

Bus. 502 Marketing Communications and Brand Management

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to develop and enhance students’ knowledge base and skills with theories and practices in the planning, imple-
mentation and evaluation of effective Integrated Marketing Communication (IMC) campaigns and brand development programmes in the international and local contexts. By the end of the course, students are expected to be able to apply concepts to practice, analyse real cases from an IMC perspective, develop IMC plans and present them in a professional manner, and making use of IMC plans to build strong brands. Making use of case-analysis, students can develop their analytical skills in applying consumer psychology research in different marketing communication settings.

**Bus. 503 Applications of Psychology to Marketing**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course is a survey of psychological principles applied to the workplace and market. It is a practical course in which knowledge of business and psychology are welded together to tackle the challenges faced by business organizations. It aims to introduce to students the psychosocial, interpersonal, and behavioural dynamics of people in markets, develop students’ abilities in utilizing systems and skills in psychology to analyse issues in marketing, and critically review business issues in marketing strategies such as positioning, branding, product development, pricing, distribution, and promotion.

**Bus. 540 Strategic Innovation and Marketing Management**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course focuses on how innovation affects the competitive dynamics of product strategy, how marketers should strategically
manage innovation, and how marketers should best create and implement strategies to maximize chances for success and create value to customers. Students will learn the principles underlying innovation and problem-solving in the modern business context and develop an appreciation of the strategic implications and opportunities resulting from dynamic innovation. It aims to enhance students’ ability to formulate a firm’s innovation and collaboration strategy, and assess and resolve marketing challenges in a rapidly changing environment.

**Study Block 2: Contemporary Marketing Practices**

**Bus. 521 Digital Marketing and Internet Consumer Behaviour**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to introduce students to cutting-edge research in the intersecting areas of consumer psychology and new media marketing. It provides students with advanced knowledge of the fundamental and critical impact of the Internet and how it changes consumer psychology, behaviour and traditional marketing practices. Major features of Internet consumer behaviour will be identified and explained. Prevailing techniques in understanding e-marketing opportunities, challenges, and strategies and design of e-marketing plan will be included. Common strategies for the marketing of goods and services via Internet and social media will be discussed and evaluated.

**Bus. 522 Chinese Psychology and Marketing**

1 Term; 3 Credits
This course aims to familiarize students with the important knowledge, frameworks and concepts of marketing from a Chinese psychological and cultural perspective. It draws on knowledge of cultural, cross-cultural, and social psychology from abroad, and tests this against the experience and behaviour of Chinese people. It will apply relevant psychological principles and methods to the study of Chinese psychology and behaviour to develop students’ capacity to apply marketing strategies to a given situation in the China market.

**Bus. 523 Customer Relationship Management**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to familiarize students with the important knowledge, frameworks and concepts of customer relationship management. Making use of the concepts of consumer psychology, the course will examine how to measure long-run customer profitability, how to create value for customers, how to acquire, develop, and retain customers, and how to build up a close and loyal relationship with customers. It aims to develop students’ practical skills in applying customer relationship management principles to analyse customer data, create solutions for a specific business, and develop a close relationship with customers.

**Bus. 524 Global Marketing**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with an understanding of the fundamental concepts and issues of international marketing. Students will appreciate the psychological differences of customers
across cultures and learn how multinational corporations (MNCs) operate and compete across borders. The course examines the impact of economic, cultural, political, legal, and other environmental influences on international marketing. It will discuss how to identify and analyse worldwide marketing opportunities and examine marketing strategies across different cultural contexts. The course will focus on the decision making processes in the areas of foreign market analysis, target identification, product planning, promotion and channels of distribution.

**Bus. 525 Organizational Marketing**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to enhance students’ understanding of the nature of managing business relationships in business to business markets. They will be able to analyse how organizations make buying decisions, and understand the organizational influences and the variety of methodologies for addressing the various concerns of these influences. Concepts including strategic alliance, networking, supply chain management, outsourcing, and issues and impacts of globalization, will be introduced. With value created and delivered in the marketplace as its cornerstone, this course equips students with the necessary marketing tools to deal with issues related to business markets.

**Study Block 3: Research and Analytical Techniques**

**Bus. 531 Research Methods and Design**

1 Term; 3 Credits
This course prepares students to apply statistics and probability concepts to marketing decisions. Students learn important criteria for developing effective research questions, research design, data collection and analysis and presentation of results. It aims to build up students’ abilities to: 1) define research problems, 2) utilize relevant sources of data from traditional and electronic information sources, 3) demonstrate the use of research information in solving managerial problems, and 4) become an effective decision maker.

**Bus. 532 Marketing Analytics**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with an understanding of the roles of statistics, analytical techniques and computer models in enhancing marketing decisions in the modern enterprise and an understanding of consumer psychology and behaviours. It aims to examine how marketers improve performance with the use of quantitative tools and techniques, and utilize different marketing decision models to plan, forecast, analyse and find solutions. Students then acquire better marketing decision making methods in solving a variety of problems, such as product positioning and customer targeting. Ethics in marketing decision making will also be emphasized. The aim is to foster and enhance students’ skills in making IT-intensive marketing decisions.

**Bus. 541-2 Master’s Project**

2 Terms; 6 Credits

This course is designed to allow students to demonstrate their abilities in performing independent research and development work,
and to develop expertise in a chosen area of marketing strategy and consumer psychology through their application of theories and techniques they have learned in their coursework. The research may be quantitative or qualitative in nature, but must include original inquiry and analysis and a review of the literature. In undertaking the dissertation, students should demonstrate initiative and intellectual achievements and an understanding of the subject matter and of the principles being applied. Students should also be able to present the results of the investigation in a precise, professional and well-organized manner in the form of a dissertation.
Aims and Objectives

The Bachelor of Arts (Hons.) in Chinese Language and Literature programme emphasizes cultivation of students’ virtues, enabling them to acquire profound knowledge of classical studies, Chinese literature, Chinese language and literary theories; to achieve higher level of writing; and to develop creativity, critical thinking and the ability of self-learning. Thus, after completing this programme, students can apply the knowledge they have learnt to teaching Chinese, secretarial works in government and private organizations, various literary and artistic works, as well as to further studies in postgraduate programmes.

Characteristics of the Programme

1. Traditional Chinese Culture

Inheriting and carrying forward Chinese culture occupies an important position in the Chinese programme. Thus, the programme offers various courses such as Introduction to Chinese Culture, Guided Readings of the Chinese Classics, Pre-Qin Philosophers, etc. In many significant aspects, ideas and outlook on values raised by traditional Chinese culture, which
are different from those of western culture, are the guiding ideologies for the world’s development in harmony and sharing prosperity in modern time with wide applicability.

2. Chinese Literature and Chinese Language
The Chinese programme includes systematic courses of Chinese literature and Chinese language. The former contains History of Chinese Literature, *Shi Jing*, *Chu Ci*, Modern Chinese Literature, Contemporary Chinese Literature, etc. The latter contains General Linguistics, Chinese Etymology, Chinese Phonology, etc. Students can learn a wide scope of knowledge. The programme also offers Chinese Literary Criticism, Introduction to Literary Theory, etc from which students can obtain knowledge of both Chinese literary criticism and western literary theories.

3. Integration between Research and Creation
The Chinese programme not only allows students to build up their research abilities of literature, language and literary theories, but also emphasizes creative practices and writing. The programme offers Chinese Poetry, Selected Readings in Chinese *Ci*, *Pian Wen*, and Literary Appreciation and Creative Writing, etc. The above courses all provide opportunities for students to practise various types of writings.

4. Biliteracy and Trilingualism
The programme provides English language and Putonghua training and emphasizes standard Cantonese pronunciations.
Graduates of the degree programme need to have successfully completed a minimum of 127 credits, consisting of required and elective courses. The course lists for the four years of the honours degree programme appear as follows:

**Bachelor of Arts (Hons.) in Chinese Language and Literature**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Credits</th>
<th>1st Term</th>
<th>2nd Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First Year (Total number of credits required: 41)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Language Requirement**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 111-2</td>
<td>English Usage</td>
<td>3 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Departmental Core Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Literary Theory</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 103 / 221</td>
<td>Modern Chinese Literature</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 104 / 320</td>
<td>Contemporary Chinese Literature</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 111</td>
<td>Guided Readings of the Chinese Classics</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 112 / 200</td>
<td>Shi Ji</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 113</td>
<td>Lun Yu</td>
<td>2 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 121-2</td>
<td>History of Chinese Literature</td>
<td>2 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 131-2</td>
<td>Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates)</td>
<td>1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 133</td>
<td>Modern Chinese</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 134</td>
<td>Classical Chinese</td>
<td>3 -</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Exemption is allowed from Chi. 131-2 based on an exemption test held in late August.
**Departmental Electives** (must choose 6 credits from the following list)

Chi. 180  Introduction to Chinese Culture .................................. - 3  
Hist. 110  Introduction to Chinese History .................................. - 3  
Phil. 113  Logic ........................................................................... - 3  

**Total number of credits for First Year courses**

Language Requirements: 6  
Departmental Core Requirements: 29  
Departmental Electives: 6  
Non-Departmental Electives: 0  
Total: 41

**Second Year (Total number of credits required: 35-38)**

**Language Requirement**

Eng. 211-2  English Writing .......................................................... 3 3  

**Departmental Core Requirements**

Chi. 112/200  Shi Ji ........................................................................... - 3  
Chi. 201  Chinese Poetry I ........................................................ 3 -  
Chi. 211  Chinese Etymology .................................................... - 3  
Chi. 103/221  Modern Chinese Literature ..................................... 3 -  

**Departmental Electives** (must choose 9-11 credits from the following list)

Chi. 202  Chinese Poetry II ........................................................... - 3  
Chi. 210  Chinese Classical Novels .............................................. 3 -  
Chi. 220  Literary Appreciation and Creative Writing ................. - 3  
Chi. 230  Essays of the Tang and Song Dynasties ....................... - 3  
Chi. 251-2  Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates) ............... 1 1  
Chi. 260  General Linguistics ..................................................... 3 -  
Chi. 287  Contemporary Chinese Fictions .................................... 3 -
**Non-Departmental Electives** (must choose 8-9 credits from the following list)

**Subject Domain**

**Language:**
- Eng. 240 Literary Translation ..................................................... - 3

**Philosophy / Psychology:**
- Phil. 113 Logic ........................................................................... - 3
- Psy. 100 Introductory Psychology ............................................... - 3

**Information Technology:**
- Comp. 204 Web Page Development ........................................... 3 (3)

**History:**
- Hist. 210 History of Qin-Han-Wei-Jin Dynasties ........................... 3 -
- Hist. 211 History of Sui and Tang Dynasties ...................................... - 3
- Hist. 230 Study of Chinese Historical Sources and Materials ....... 3
- Hist. 240 History of Hong Kong .................................................. 3 (3)
- Hist. 241 From Colony to SAR: Reunification and Challenges in Contemporary Hong Kong ........................................... 3 -
- Hist. 250 Cultural Contacts between Chinese and Non-Chinese Civilizations .................................................. - 3
- Hist. 350 China & Europe in the Making of the Modern World .. - 3

**Journalism:**
- Jour. 100 Introduction to Journalism & Mass Communication ........ 3 (3)
- Jour. 221-2 News Reporting and Writing in Chinese ..................... 3 3

**Sociology:**
- Soc. 204 Cultures in the Contemporary World ............................. 3 -
- Soc. 208 Hong Kong Society and Culture .................................... (3) 3

**Total number of credits for Second Year courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Language Requirement:</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Departmental Core Requirements:</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Departmental Electives:</td>
<td>9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Departmental Electives:</td>
<td>8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total:</td>
<td>35-38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Third Year (Total number of credits required: 27-30)

#### Departmental Core Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 300</td>
<td>Shi Jing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 301</td>
<td>Chinese Phonology I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 311</td>
<td>Selected Readings in Chinese Ci I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 104 / 320</td>
<td>Contemporary Chinese Literature</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 321</td>
<td>Chinese Literary Criticism I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Electives

**Departmental Electives** (must choose at least 9 credits from the following list)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 302</td>
<td>Chinese Phonology II</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 312</td>
<td>Selected Readings in Chinese Ci II</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 322</td>
<td>Chinese Literary Criticism II</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 330</td>
<td>Chu Ci</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 331</td>
<td>Elementary Pian Wen</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 360</td>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 361-2</td>
<td>Advanced Putonghua (for Undergraduates)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 370</td>
<td>Selected Writers in Classical Poetry</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 373</td>
<td>Li Shangyin’s Poetry</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 380</td>
<td>Modern Chinese Prose</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Non-Departmental Electives**

**Subject Domain**

**Language:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 387</td>
<td>Media Translation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**History:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 310</td>
<td>History of Song and Yuan Dynasties</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 311</td>
<td>History of Ming and Qing Dynasties</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 330</td>
<td>Study of Western and Chinese Historiography</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 340</td>
<td>Economic History of Hong Kong since 1949</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 360</td>
<td>History of Chinese Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 361</td>
<td>Historical Geography of China</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Journalism:**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 310</td>
<td>Storytelling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 360</td>
<td>Magazine Writing and Editing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 431</td>
<td>Script Writing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 233</td>
<td>Contemporary Social Issues</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sociology:**

**Total number of credits for Third Year courses**

- Departmental Core Requirements: 15
- Electives: 12-15
- Total: 27-30

**Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 27-29)**

**Departmental Core Requirements**

- Chi. 401-2 Graduation Thesis ........................................ 3 3
- Chi. 410 Study of Pre-Qin Philosophers .............................. - 3
- Chi. 420 Study of Wenxin Diaolong .................................. 3 -
- Chi. 430 Zuo Zhuan .......................................................... 3 -

**Electives**

**Departmental Electives** (must choose at least 9 credits from the following list)

- Chi. 440 Songs of Yuan Dynasty ........................................ - 3
- Chi. 470 Yi Jing .............................................................. - 3
- Chi. 490 Selected Readings of Fu ..................................... 3 -
- Chi. 491 Modern Chinese Fiction ...................................... 3 -
- Chi. 492 Modern Chinese Drama ........................................ 3 -
- Chi. 493 Critical Study of Contemporary Chinese Writers ...... 3 -
- Chi. 494 Advanced Pian Wen .............................................. - 3

**Non-Departmental Electives**

**Subject Domain**

**Language:**
Eng. 440  Translation and Globalization ........................................ 3 -
Eng. 487  Contemporary Translation Theory & its Applications...- 3

History:
Hist. 410  Republican China ...................................................... 3 -
Hist. 411  China since 1949 ........................................................ - 3
Hist. 440  Hong Kong and the Pearl River Delta: Economic and Social Change since 1978 ................................... 3 -
Hist. 450  China in the Contemporary World ............................. - 3
Hist. 460  Intellectual History of Modern China ......................... 3 -

Sociology:
Soc. 371  Chinese Culture and Society ...................................... - 3
Soc. 409  Collective Memory and Social Change ........................ 3 -
Soc. 432  State and Society ....................................................... - 3

Journalism:
Jour. 310  Storytelling ............................................................. 3 -
Jour. 360  Magazine Writing and Editing ................................. - 3
Jour. 431  Script Writing .......................................................... - 3

Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses
Departmental Core Requirements: 15
Electives: 12-14
Total: 27-29
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(BA DEGREE PROGRAMME)

Chi. 100 Introduction to Literary Theory
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to give students a general introduction to the changes in literary concepts and the emergence of genres through Western and Chinese literature, and commentaries on the foundations and theories of the different branches of literature.

Chi. 103 / 221 Modern Chinese Literature
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course studies the Chinese literary revolution and the achievements of authors of New Literature in the fields of poetry, prose, fiction and drama from 1917 to 1949. Students are required to write critiques on the topics discussed.

Chi. 104 / 320 Contemporary Chinese Literature
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course introduces students to the study of contemporary Chinese literature from both Mainland China and Taiwan from 1949-1999. The year 1949 has been widely accepted as the watershed of contemporary Chinese literature as Mainland China and Taiwan literature began to draw apart from that of the past and have their own paths of development. The course will not only study the inter-relationship between these 2 streams of contemporary Chinese literature, but will also deal with their respective characteristics. Furthermore, the course examines the study of the history of contemporary
literature, the major authors and their representative works from a literary point of view.

**Chi. 111 Guided Readings of the Chinese Classics**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

Ancient Chinese studies can be divided into two categories: *Four Sections* (四部) — including Classics, History, Philosophy, and Anthology, and *Three Studies* (三學) — Philosophy, Poetry and Prose, and Textual Criticism. The objective of this course is to train students to acquire the ability to read ancient texts. Besides a brief introduction to Chinese Etymology, Phonology and Semasiology, selected readings from Classics, History, Philosophy, and Anthology are also provided to students for exploring ancient Chinese studies and evoking their interests in the ancient works.

**Chi. 112 / 200 Shi Ji (史記)**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces students to the bibliographical study of one of China's ancient great works – *Shi Ji*. After covering selected readings in the course, students will be able to master the historiographical and literary achievements of *Shi Ji*. Completion of the course will in turn deepen their understanding of ancient historiography, and enhance their reading and writing abilities of classical Chinese.

Tutorials and class discussions will be arranged in order to strengthen students' ability of critical thinking and analytical power.
Chi. 113 Lun Yu (論語)

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course requires students to acquire the fundamental knowledge of Lun Yu, Confucius’ life and his thoughts through lectures and classroom discussions. Students will get a deeper understanding of the literary style of quotation in the pre-Qin period. The course also promotes the quintessence of traditional ethics such as benevolence, righteousness, ritual, wisdom and so on. Moreover, thesis writing is required in order to raise students’ abilities of independent thinking, analysis, and writing.

Chi. 121-2 History of Chinese Literature

2 Terms; 4 Credits

This course is an introduction and exposition of representative literary works ranging from the Shi Jing (詩經) to late Qing Poems, with attention to historical background, brief accounts of author’s life and experience, style and character, changes in structure and form. Students will gain a general understanding of the sources and trends of the development of Chinese literature.

Chi. 131-2 Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates)

2 Terms; 2 Credits

This course is designed to introduce students to the phonetics of Putonghua and enable them to master Hanyu Pinyin. Students will learn around 2,000 commonly used Putonghua words and expressions. The requirements and outlines of the National Putonghua Proficiency Test will also be introduced.
Chi. 133 Modern Chinese  
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course will provide students with a basic training of modern Chinese and aim to enhance their abilities to analyse and apply modern Chinese. It covers four topics: phonetics, etymology, lexicology and grammar.

Chi. 134 Classical Chinese  
1 Term; 3 Credits
Students will be introduced the differences between modern and classical Chinese, the usage of vocabulary and the sentence structures in classical Chinese. This course provides students with basic training of classical Chinese, enabling them to read and study classical works.

Chi. 180 Introduction to Chinese Culture  
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course is designed to give students a systematic understanding of the basic knowledge of Chinese culture. The wide coverage of the course in politics, philosophy, history, ethics, morality, science and technology, art of literature, socio-cultural institutions, social life, etc will familiarize students with the supremacy and radiance of the Chinese cultural heritage, which in turn can arouse students' sense of pride and interest in the study of Chinese culture. The course also provides a grounding for the in-depth study of Chinese literature.
Chi. 201 Chinese Poetry I

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at acquainting students with the origin and development of Chinese classical poems, as well as the four tones and poetic rhyme so as to cultivate students’ interest in writing classical poems. Great works will be selected from Han, Wei, Six Dynasties up to Yuan, Ming and Qing Dynasties. Studies will also be stressed on different factions and styles, appreciation and writing skills. Traditional and tutorial teaching methods will be used simultaneously.

Chi. 202 Chinese Poetry II

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course being a continuation of Chinese Poetry I, aims at further research and advanced writing of Chinese poetry. Poems from the Song Dynasty and the Qing Tong Guang Faction will be selected so as to analyse their artistic atmosphere, styles and level of writing skills. Practice of writing poems will also be emphasized.

Chi. 210 Chinese Classical Novels

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course provides students with a general understanding of the development of Chinese classical novels from pre-Qin to Qing Dynasties. Students are required to read a wide range of representative well-known Chinese classical novels, with reference to their styles, characteristics, literary skills and their places in the development of Chinese fictions. Special attention will be given to critical appreciation of Chinese classical novels.
Chi. 211 Chinese Etymology

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course starts with an examination of the distinctive nature of the Chinese language and a delineation of the scope of Chinese etymology. The course goes on to trace the sources and developmental stages of Chinese characters, with emphasis on the six forms of structural origin.

A brief survey is made of the historical aspect of etymology. Guidance is then given on how to study Shuo Wen (說文). From the principles observed regarding character formation and changes in the past, a prognosis is attempted on the future development of the Chinese language.

Chi. 220 Literary Appreciation and Creative Writing

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course covers outline studies of literary creation, theories of criticism, techniques in writing and studies of selected authors and their significance with a view to leading students through progressive understanding of the processes involved in literary appreciation and writing.

Students' efforts at literary creation are to be presented for comparison of quality and accuracy under the lecturer's guidance.

The best selections from both classical and modern works of different genres such as prose, fiction and poetry are extracted and discussed for illustrating important points in the art of writing.
Chi. 230 Essays of the Tang and Song Dynasties

1 Term; 3 Credits

Through the study of the essays of the *Eight Pre-eminent Classical Chinese Writers of the Tang and Song Dynasties*, this course enables students to gain an in-depth understanding of the origin of the development and the profound impact of these essays on classical Chinese writing and the significant achievements of proses of Tang and Song Dynasties. Upon completion of the course, students' abilities of reading, writing and appreciation of classical Chinese will be consolidated.

Chi. 251-2 Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates)

2 Terms; 2 Credits

This course trains students to orally express their ideas in Putonghua. They will learn a range of Putonghua expressions and phrases which are commonly used in daily conversation based on the required reading materials of the National Putonghua Proficiency Test. There will be extensive exercises in reading short texts and dealing with the pronunciation of difficult words in Putonghua.

Chi. 260 General Linguistics

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to introduce the concepts of general linguistics to students. The study of fundamental theories and structural rules of Chinese will equip students with the ability of analysis while learning the language.
Chi. 287 Contemporary Chinese Fictions
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course is designed for students to study several influential contemporary fictions. Students will apply modern literary theories to study and analyse the related works and in turn enhance their abilities of analysis and appreciation.

Chi. 300 Shi Jing (詩經)
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course aims to promote students' understanding of the basic ideas and thoughts, themes and literary artistry of Shi Jing through lectures, analysis and discussions so that they will be better equipped to understand and appreciate the songs of Shi Jing. In the course of term paper writing, students will further establish their independent thinking, in-depth learning and writing skills which will lay a solid foundation for their further study of Shi Jing.

Chi. 301 Chinese Phonology I
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course is an introduction to the sound system of Chinese dialects. Students will develop skills in transcribing speech sounds and analysing linguistic data with phonological rules. It offers a wide-ranging account of Mandarin and Cantonese in their origins, historical development and phonological theories.

Chi. 302 Chinese Phonology II
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course serves as a further, more in-depth study of Chinese phonology beyond the introductory level. It is designed to provide students with training in phonology in order to equip them with the ability to describe and analyse speech sounds that will facilitate their analysis of the development of Chinese phonetics from ancient to modern times. The course also provides students with a comprehensive knowledge of the characteristics and features of Chinese phonology with the help of teaching materials and theories of traditional phonology.

**Chi. 311 Selected Readings in Chinese Ci (詞) I**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to give students a scrutiny of the origin, various schools and structures of Ci while representative works of the major authors from Tang to Song Dynasties will be selected for reading and analysed with respect to their backgrounds, styles, thread of thoughts, artistic conceptions and emotions.

**Chi. 312 Selected Readings in Chinese Ci (詞) II**

1 Term; 3 Credits

As a continuation of Selected Readings in Chinese Ci I, this course will cover a selection of the works of famous authors from Southern Song Dynasty. Students will have further understanding of the evolutionary background and the characteristics of various schools and styles of Ci in that period. The course also focuses on the analysis of Ci with respect to its rhythms and its way of composition while works from Chang Zhou (常州) and the Zhe (浙) School in Qing Dynasty will be introduced.
Chi. 321 Chinese Literary Criticism I

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course guides students through the historical development of Chinese literary criticism, emphasizing on the study of the masterpieces from pre-Qin period to Qing Dynasty. This will give students a basic concept of literary criticism and a general knowledge of the history of Chinese literary criticism. Students are introduced to major works of literary criticisms in poetry, prose and traditional cultural literature. Critics of ancient Chinese literature and theories of Western literary criticism will be introduced as a comparative study in Chi. 322 Chinese Literary Criticism II.

Chi. 322 Chinese Literary Criticism II

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course offers a study of the historical development of Chinese literary criticisms in ancient Chinese drama and classical fictions, emphasizing on the forms and features. The course surveys the contributions made from drama and fiction critics over the years and covers the major traditional literary theories. Through the comparative study between the traditional literary theories and western literary criticisms, the course will improve students' awareness of the characteristics of Chinese and Western literary criticisms.

Chi. 330 Chu Ci (楚辭)

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims at enhancing students' understanding of the
basic ideas and thoughts, themes and literary artistry and the authors of *Chu Ci*. Besides, in the course of term paper writing, students will further establish their independent thinking, ability of analysis and writing which will lay a solid foundation for their further study of *Chu Ci*.

**Chi. 331 Elementary Pian Wen (駢文)**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course traces the historical development of the euphemistic and antithetic writing known as *Pian Wen* and introduces students to the study of the meaning, rhymes, writing skill and literary artistry of such a style. It is designed to enhance students' ability in understanding and appreciating *Pian Wen* and in enhancing their critical thinking.

**Chi. 360 Bibliography**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course familiarizes students with the basic understanding of Chinese Bibliography through the study of its origin and historical development in different dynasties. By analysing theories of traditional bibliography, students will establish a solid foundation for further studies in this field.

**Chi. 361-2 Advanced Putonghua (for Undergraduates)**

2 Terms; 4 Credits

This course is designed to further enhance students’ proficiency in Putonghua on the basis of existing knowledge of phonetics, lexicons and grammar of the language so that they may speak
fluent and standard Putonghua in their daily life, workplace and social activities. Besides, students will also acquire the ability to teach Putonghua and to attain a proficiency level equivalent to Third Class standard defined by the State Council of the PRC upon completion of the course.

Chi. 370 Selected Writers in Classical Poetry
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course focuses on the study of the life, ideas and thoughts, literary style and influences of famous poets in the past. Upon completion of the course, students will have built up their ability of independent thinking, analysis and pursue further studies in the field.

Chi. 373 Li Shangyin’s Poetry
1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of this course is to provide a comprehensive survey of a significant poet, Li Shangyin (李商隐), in Tang dynasty, with insight into his life, thoughts, distinctive poetic style, and deep influence to later generations. His artistic achievement earned himself a very high reputation in late Tang period. A well-known poet, Yuan Haowen (元好问), admires Li Shangyin’s poems very much. He says: “poets love Li Shangyin’s poetry anyway; however, no one footnotes his poems to make them easier to understand.”

Chi. 380 Modern Chinese Prose
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course is divided into 2 parts: 1) a scrutiny of the develop-
ment of prose in various stages from 1917-1949 and the representative works of renowned writers of the period; 2) training on creative writing of prose.

**Chi. 401-2 Graduation Thesis**

**2 Terms; 6 Credits**

Students shall write a thesis on a specific topic under the supervision of an instructor in the final year. Emphasis will be laid on the methodology and format of thesis writing. The purpose of this course is to integrate what they have learned over the previous 3 academic years and to lay a solid foundation for their future engagement in academic research.

**Chi. 410 Study of Pre-Qin Philosophers**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

The course aims to acquaint students with a deeper understanding of the spirit, theme and development of pre-Qin philosophy, with special emphasis on the role and impact of each philosopher to Chinese philosophy. Upon completion of the course, students will have acquired the ability of independent thinking and built up their own value system through the integration of philosophy and life.

**Chi. 420 Study of Wenxin Diaolong (文心雕龍)**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course aims at acquainting students with the more important sections of *Wenxin Diaolong* by Liu Xie (劉勰), including the origins of the writings in general, their changes and develop-
ments, the art of composing, theories on literary writing, and principles of literary criticism.

**Chi. 430 Zuo Zhuan (左傳)**

1 Term; 3 Credits

Readings will be selected mainly from *Zuo Zhuan*, one of the three commentaries on the *Spring and Autumn Annuals*. The selected texts from *Zuo Zhuan* will be analysed and evaluated from the viewpoints of historical, literary and classic studies.

**Chi. 440 Songs of Yuan Dynasty**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces students to the historical background, the basic ideas and thoughts, literary artistry and the development of *Yuan Qu* (元曲) through lectures, analysis and discussions. Representative works of major authors will be selected for in-depth study. Upon completion of the course, students will have acquired the skills in writing academic thesis through the training in class and term paper writing.

**Chi. 470 Yi Jing (易經)**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to introduce the origin of 8 trigrams and the working principle of 64 hexagrams. *Yi Jing* is the ancient divination masterpiece which gives us a general understanding of the principle that everything in the universe is in constant change. The 64 hexagrams represent every possible combination of six-line structure and are believed to embody the major situations encountered in life. The
study of the Yi Jing can help students to adapt to change in a balanced and harmonious fashion by providing guidance in uncertain situation through mathematical configuration. Students are required to demonstrate their understanding and application of this ancient philosophy through group discussions and debates.

**Chi. 490 Selected Readings of Fu (賦)**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course gives students a general understanding of the evolution and various styles of Fu in different historic periods by familiarizing students with the origin, development and literary artistry of Fu so as to lay the foundation for their further study of different types of writing.

**Chi. 491 Modern Chinese Fiction**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course focuses on fictions written during the New-vernacular period from 1917-1949 in which the origin, evolution of old and new fictions and representative works from renowned authors of the period will be studied. After the course, students will have a general understanding of modern fictions and appreciation of fictions enhanced.

**Chi. 492 Modern Chinese Drama**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course focuses on dramas written during the New-vernacular period from 1917-1949 in which its origin, evolution and representa-
tive works from renowned authors of the period will be studied. Be-
sides, the influence of Chinese classical drama and western drama
on modern Chinese drama will be investigated to give students an
in-depth understanding of the characteristics of Chinese modern
drama.

Chi. 493 Critical Study of Contemporary Chinese Writers

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course is designed to provide students with a deeper un-
derstanding of contemporary Chinese writers so that students can
acquire the ability for appreciation and analysis of their works.

Chi. 494 Advanced Pian Wen (駢文)

1 Term; 3 Credits

Upon the basis of Elementary Pian Wen, reading and writing
abilities of Pian Wen will be further enhanced in this course. Reading
will mainly concentrate on Tang, Song and Qing dynasties’ out-
standing Pian Wen. Topics concerning writing complicated couplets
will be selected for in-depth analysis.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSE
(SERVICE COURSE)

Chi. 101-2 First Year Chinese

2 Terms; 8 Credits

This course has 2 components: 1) the study of selected Chinese readings and 2) the training of Chinese writing skills.

The first component of the course is designed to provide students with a general understanding of Chinese culture through the study of various styles of Chinese writing in different dynasties from ancient to modern times, such as essay, biography, prose, narrative, poetry and well-known readings of Chinese sages.

The second component aims to foster students’ enthusiasm for and understanding of the essential elements of creative writing through practice in various themes and styles of language usage and practical Chinese writing so as to enhance students’ power of expression and writing skills.

Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of Chinese Language and Literature, please refer to their respective Departments for details.
Department of Counselling and Psychology

In 2004, approval was given by the Hong Kong Council for Academic Accreditation (HKCAA) to offer a Bachelor of Social Sciences (Honours) programme in Counselling and Psychology, the first of its kind to be offered in Hong Kong. In 2007, approval was given by the Programme Validation and Review Committee (PVRC) of HKSYU to offer a Bachelor of Social Sciences (Honours) programme in Psychology, the fourth of its kind to be offered in Hong Kong. In addition to the undergraduate programmes, the Master of Social Sciences in Counselling Psychology programme was successfully validated by HKCAAVQ in March 2010, and approval to offer the programme was received from the Executive Council in June 2010.

The BScocSc (Hons.) programme in Counselling and Psychology is structured as follows. During the first year, students devote their time to acquiring proficiency in the English and Chinese languages and to grasp a fundamental understanding of the subject matter of Psychology. During the second year, a solid foundation in Psychology continues to be built alongside with an introduction to theories and skills in Counselling. In the third year, the emphasis on Counselling and Psychology becomes more balanced with students being required to take advanced courses in both Counselling and Psychology. In the final year, a substantial amount of time is devoted to the Internship Programme for which students have to spend two full days each week (or 50 days in the academic year) in the field as
interns in Counselling. The total number of credits required for graduation is 123.

The BSocSc (Hons.) in Psychology programme aims at equipping students with core competencies in Psychology, as well as ensuring that students become conversant with the protocols, procedures, skills and ethics of psychological research. This emphasis on research is both an important and distinguishing feature of the programme, as those delivering the programme firmly believe that students of Psychology have a fundamental responsibility to ensure that the body of knowledge in Psychology grows in breadth, depth and precision. The total number of credits required for graduation is 122.

The MSocSc in Counselling Psychology is a professional degree that qualifies graduates for registration with professional associations. The programme is designed to create a distinct professional identity for Counselling Psychologists, and to contribute towards meeting psychological needs within the community. The programme adopts a scientist-practitioner approach, and is organized into the dimensions of knowledge, research and practice of counselling psychology. The total number of credits required for graduation is 63.

In 2012, approval was given by the Hong Kong Council for Accreditation of Academic and Vocational Qualifications (HKCAAVQ) to offer the Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology programme (PGDP). The PGDP sets out to provide an education for students who are
holders of Bachelor’s degrees with Honours in fields other than psychology and who intend to pursue Master’s level education or above in the field of psychology in Hong Kong or overseas. The Programme is equally suitable for graduate members of the workforce who are interested in upgrading their abilities and credentials for the purpose of enhancing job performance. Employee performance in a wide variety of industries such as law enforcement, human resource management, education, non-governmental organizations, advertising and business administration can be enhanced by acquiring a core understanding of psychology.

The courses comprising the programme have been designed to feature equal emphasis on lectures and tutorials. To this end, contact hours have been evenly divided between these two delivery modes. Instead of the undergraduate norm of 2:1 (two sessions for lecture: one session for tutorial), the postgraduate diploma programme features a 1:1 ratio. The end result is a more lab-oriented and seminar-based approach to teaching and learning which is better suited, in our view, for mature students who have already earned a bachelor’s degree. In essence, we strive to create a student-centred teaching culture. The role of the instructor is to facilitate student learning in an outcome based environment.
Bachelor of Social Sciences (Hons.) in Counselling and Psychology

First Year (Total number of credits required: 35)

Compulsory Courses

Language Requirements
Chi. 101-2 First Year Chinese ..................................................... 4 4
Eng. 111-2 English Usage ........................................................... 3 3

ICT Requirement
Comp. 101 Introduction to Information Technology ...................... 3

Introductory Courses
Psy. 100 Introductory Psychology .................................................. 3 -
Psy. 103 Statistics for Social Sciences ........................................... 3 -
Psy. 110 Biological Bases of Behaviour ......................................... 3
Psy. 120 Lifespan Developmental Psychology .............................. 3

Additional Requirement for All Students
Coun. 110 Personal Growth (2 hours per week, Pass/Fail) ....... 0 -

Non-Departmental Electives (must choose at least 6 credits from the following list)
Bus. 100 Introduction to Business ................................................. 3 (3)
Bus. 120 Principles and Practice of Management ....................... 3 (3)
Bus. 130 Principles of Marketing ................................................. 3 (3)
Chi. 131-2 Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates) .......... 1 1
Econ. 100 Introduction to Economics .......................................... 3 (3)
Eng. 140 Introduction to Translation ........................................... 3 (3)
Hist. 180 Introduction to the Study of the PRC .......................... 3 (3)
Jour. 100 Introduction to Journalism & Mass Communication.... 3 -
P.E. 103  Physical Education .................................................... 2 -
P.E. 104  Physical Education ..................................................... - 2
Phil. 103  Introduction to Philosophy ......................................... 3 -
Phil. 113  Logic........................................................................... - 3
Soc. 103  Introduction to Anthropology................................. 3 -
Soc. 107  Understanding Sociology........................................... 3 (3)
Soc. 110  Understanding Capitalism .......................................... - 3
Soc. 150  Critical Thinking.......................................................... 3 (3)
Soc. 208  Hong Kong Society and Culture................................. 3
S.W. 110  Social Welfare System and Social Services in Hong Kong ................................................................. 3

Total number of credits for First Year courses
Compulsory Courses: 29
Non-Departmental Electives: 6
Total: 35

Second Year (Total number of credits required: 33)

Compulsory Courses
Language Requirement
Eng. 211-2  English Writing ...................................................... 3 3

Foundation Courses
Coun. 200  Theories and Systems in Counselling and Psychotherapy ................................................................. 3 -
Coun. 210  Micro-Skills in Counselling and Psychotherapy .......... - 3
Coun. 220  Cultural Diversity in Counselling and Psychotherapy ... - 3
Psy. 200  Social Psychology .......................................................... 3 -
Psy. 204  Personality and Individual Differences ....................... - 3
Psy. 205  Cognitive Psychology .................................................... 3
Psy. 206  Research Methods and Designs .................................... 3 -
Additional Requirements for All Students
Coun. 230  Personal Experience as Counsellee (30 hours, to be completed before commencement of Fourth Year)
Coun. 240  Pre-internship in Counselling (150 hours, to be completed before commencement of Fourth Year)

Departmental Electives (must choose at least 3 credits from the following list)
Psy. 207  History and Systems of Psychology .......................... 3
Psy. 208  Psychoanalytic Concepts .......................................... 3
Psy. 209  Positive Psychology ................................................... - 3
Psy. 214  Qualitative Research Methods ..................................... 3
Psy. 303  Health Psychology..................................................... 3 (3)
Psy. 308  Human Sexuality ........................................................ 3

Non-Departmental Electives (must choose at least 3 credits from the following list)
Bus. 250  Organizational Behaviour .......................................... 3 (3)
Chi. 251-2  Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates) .................. 1 1
Comp. 203  Computer Applications in Social Sciences .................... 3
Comp. 204  Web Page Development ........................................... 3 (3)
Soc. 233  Contemporary Social Issues ................................. 3 -
Soc. 255  Philosophy through Film and Literature ...................... 3 -
S.W. 260  Volunteering and Community Services ....................... 3 -
S.W. 310  Working with Marginal Youth ................................... 3 -

PLUS: All Non-Departmental electives listed under First Year

Total number of credits for Second Year courses
Compulsory Courses: 27
Departmental Electives: 3
Non-Departmental Electives: 3
Total: 33
### Compulsory Courses

#### Advanced Level Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 310</td>
<td>Advanced Skills in Individual Counselling and Psychotherapy</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 330</td>
<td>Ethics: Professional Issues and Personal Awareness</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 340</td>
<td>Advanced Skills in Group Facilitation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 420</td>
<td>Relationship Counselling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 300</td>
<td>Abnormal Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 304</td>
<td>Psychological Assessment</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 371</td>
<td>Research Project I      or</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 373</td>
<td>Capstone Project I</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Departmental Electives (must choose at least 3 credits from the following list)

#### Counselling Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 320</td>
<td>School Counselling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 350</td>
<td>Child Counselling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 360</td>
<td>Adolescent Counselling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 370</td>
<td>Counselling Students with Special Education Needs</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 380</td>
<td>Addiction Counselling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 410</td>
<td>Alternative Approaches to Counselling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 430</td>
<td>Gerontological Counselling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 440</td>
<td>Family Therapy</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 450</td>
<td>Career and Employment Counselling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Psychology Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 213</td>
<td>Computer-Assisted Data Analysis</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 306</td>
<td>Business Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 307</td>
<td>Educational Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 309</td>
<td>Industrial and Organizational Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 310</td>
<td>Advanced Cognitive Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Psy. 320 Motivation and Learning ............................................. 3
Psy. 330 Advanced Social Psychology ..................................... - 3
Psy. 404¹ Psychology of Consciousness .................................... - 3
Psy. 405¹ Human Neuropsychology ........................................ - 3
Psy. 406¹ Specific Issues in Neuroscience ............................... 3 -
Psy. 410 Psychoanalytic Readings .......................................... 3 -

PLUS: All Departmental electives listed under Second Year

¹ Not offered in 2013/14

Non-Departmental Electives (must choose at least 6 credits from the following list)
Bus. 230 Consumer Behaviour ................................................. 3 -
Bus. 309 Human Resource Management ................................. 3 -
Bus. 440 Industrial Relations and Labour Law ........................... - 3
Jour. 460 Digitization and Interactive Multimedia ...................... 3 -
PRA. 200 Public Relations and the Media .................................... 3 -
PRA. 320 Public Relations Disciplines .......................................... - 3
PRA. 330 Advertising Strategies and Design ............................. - 3
Soc. 337 Criminology ............................................................... - 3

PLUS: All Non-Departmental electives listed under First and Second Years

Total number of credits for Third Year courses
Compulsory Courses: 20
Departmental Electives: 3
Non-Departmental Electives: 6
Total: 29
Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 26)

Compulsory Courses

Advanced Level Courses

Coun. 400 Chinese Psychology and Psychotherapy .................. 3 -
Psy. 372 Research Project II  or ............................................. 3 -
Psy. 374 Capstone Project II ................................................... (3) -

Compulsory Practical Work

Coun. 461-2 Internship in Counselling ........................................... 4 4

Departmental and/or Non-Departmental Electives (must choose at least 12 credits from the following lists)

Departmental Electives

All Departmental electives listed under Second and Third Years

Non-Departmental Electives

All Non-Departmental electives listed under First, Second and Third Years

Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses

Compulsory Courses: 14
Departmental and/or Non-Departmental Electives: 12
Total: 26

Suggested Areas of Concentration

The required courses in all four years of the proposed programme ensure that graduates obtain a thorough grounding in the core aspects of Counselling and Psychology. The range of electives, however, does allow the students to develop certain degrees of expertise in their chosen area(s) of interest. On the basis of the core
and elective courses offered, four areas of concentration are suggested below.

**Youth and Education Concentration**

Students wishing to pursue a career in Youth/School Counseling or undertake postgraduate training in Educational Psychology may take the following departmental and other electives in addition to the compulsory requirements:

- Coun. 320 School Counselling
- Coun. 350 Child Counselling
- Coun. 360 Adolescent Counselling
- Coun. 450 Career and Employment Counselling
- Psy. 307 Educational Psychology
- Psy. 320 Motivation and Learning
- S.W. 310 Working with Marginal Youth

**Family and Marriage Concentration**

Students wishing to pursue a career in family and marriage counselling may take the following departmental and other electives in addition to the compulsory requirements:

- Coun. 350 Child Counselling
- Coun. 360 Adolescent Counselling
- Coun. 430 Gerontological Counselling
- Coun. 440 Family Therapy
- Psy. 303 Health Psychology
- Psy. 308 Human Sexuality

**Industrial / Organizational / Business Concentration**

Students wishing to pursue a career in the business sector or
further their education in business management may take the following departmental and other electives in addition to the compulsory requirements:

- Bus. 130 Principles of Marketing
- Bus. 250 Organizational Behaviour
- Bus. 309 Human Resource Management
- Coun. 450 Career and Employment Counselling
- PRA. 320 Public Relations Disciplines
- Psy. 309 Industrial and Organizational Psychology

**Research or Cognitive Science Concentration**

The following courses are recommended for students who are interested in the areas of Cognitive Psychology or carrying out research:

- Psy. 310 Advanced Cognitive Psychology
- Psy. 320 Motivation and Learning
- Psy. 404¹ Psychology of Consciousness
- Psy. 405¹ Human Neuropsychology
- Psy. 406¹ Specific Issues in Neuroscience

¹ Not offered in 2013/14
# Bachelor of Social Sciences (Hons.) in Psychology

**Number of Credits**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st Term</th>
<th>2nd Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total number of credits required:</strong></td>
<td>35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## First Year

### Compulsory Courses

#### Language Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>1st Term</th>
<th>2nd Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 101-2</td>
<td>First Year Chinese</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 111-2</td>
<td>English Usage</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### ICT Requirement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comp. 101</td>
<td>Introduction to Information Technology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Introductory Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 100</td>
<td>Introductory Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 103</td>
<td>Statistics for Social Sciences</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 120</td>
<td>Lifespan Developmental Psychology</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 206</td>
<td>Research Methods and Designs</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Non-Departmental Electives

(Choose at least 6 credits from the following list)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Business</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 120</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 130</td>
<td>Principles of Marketing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 131-2</td>
<td>Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Economics</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 140</td>
<td>Introduction to Translation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 180</td>
<td>Introduction to the Study of the PRC</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Journalism &amp; Mass Communication</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.E. 103</td>
<td>Physical Education</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
P.E. 104  Physical Education ..................................................... - 2
Phil. 103  Introduction to Philosophy ........................................... 3 -
Phil. 113  Logic........................................................................... - 3
Soc. 103  Introduction to Anthropology...................................... 3 -
Soc. 107  Understanding Sociology............................................ 3 (3)
Soc. 110  Understanding Capitalism .......................................... - 3
Soc. 150  Critical Thinking......................................................... 3 (3)
Soc. 208  Hong Kong Society and Culture .................................. - 3
S.W. 110  Social Welfare System and Social Services in Hong Kong ......................................................... - 3

Total number of credits for First Year courses
Compulsory Courses: 29
Non-Departmental Electives: 6
Total: 35

Second Year (Total number of credits required: 33)

Compulsory Courses

Language Requirement
Eng. 211-2  English Writing ..................................................... 3 3

Foundation Courses
Psy. 110  Biological Bases of Behaviour .................................... 3 -
Psy. 200  Social Psychology ....................................................... 3 -
Psy. 204  Personality and Individual Differences ....................... - 3
Psy. 205  Cognitive Psychology .................................................. - 3

Practical Course in Research
Psy. 213  Computer-Assisted Data Analysis ............................. 3 -
Psy. 214  Qualitative Research Methods ................................... - 3
Departmental Electives (must choose at least 6 credits from the following list)

**Psychology Courses**
- Psy. 207 History and Systems of Psychology .......................... 3
- Psy. 208 Psychoanalytic Concepts .......................................... 3
- Psy. 209 Positive Psychology ................................................... - 3
- Psy. 303 Health Psychology.................................................. 3 (3)
- Psy. 306 Business Psychology ................................................. - 3
- Psy. 307 Educational Psychology ............................................. - 3
- Psy. 308 Human Sexuality ..................................................... 3 (3)
- Psy. 309 Industrial and Organizational Psychology ................. 3
- Psy. 320 Motivation and Learning ........................................... 3
- Psy. 404¹ Psychology of Consciousness.................................. 3

¹ Not offered in 2013/14

**Counselling Courses**
- Coun. 200 Theories and Systems in Counselling and Psychotherapy.................................................. 3
- Coun. 210 Micro-Skills in Counselling and Psychotherapy .......... - 3
- Coun. 220 Cultural Diversity in Counselling and Psychotherapy ... - 3

**Non-Departmental Electives** (must choose at least 3 credits from the following list)
- Bus. 250 Organizational Behaviour ........................................ 3 (3)
- Chi. 251-2 Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates) ................. 1 1
- Comp. 203 Computer Applications in Social Sciences ................. - 3
- Comp. 204 Web Page Development ........................................... 3
- Econ. 233 The Economy of Hong Kong ..................................... - 3
- Hist. 240 History of Hong Kong ............................................. 3
- Soc. 208 Hong Kong Society and Culture .................................. - 3
- Soc. 233 Contemporary Social Issues...................................... 3
- S.W. 260 Volunteerism and Community Services ..................... 3
- S.W. 310 Working with Marginal Youth................................. 3

PLUS: All Non-Departmental electives listed under First Year
Total number of credits for Second Year courses
Compulsory Courses: 24
Departmental Electives: 6
Non-Departmental Electives: 3
Total: 33

Third Year (Total number of credits required: 30)

Compulsory Courses
Advanced Level Courses
Psy. 300 Abnormal Psychology.................................................. 3 -
Psy. 304 Psychological Assessment............................................ 3 -
Psy. 401 Research Thesis I or.................................................... 3
Psy. 411 Honours Research Thesis I............................................ (3)

Departmental Electives (must choose at least 15 credits from the following list)
Practical Course in Research
Psy. 311-2 Research Internship................................................. 3 3

Psychology Courses
Psy. 310 Advanced Cognitive Psychology.................................... 3 -
Psy. 330 Advanced Social Psychology......................................... 3 -
Psy. 404¹ Psychology of Consciousness........................................ 3 -
Psy. 405¹ Human Neuropsychology............................................. 3 -
Psy. 406¹ Specific Issues in Neuroscience.................................... 3 -
Psy. 410 Psychoanalytic Readings.............................................. 3 -
¹ Not offered in 2013/14

Counselling Courses
Coun. 310 Advanced Skills in Individual Counselling and Psychotherapy................................................. 3 -
Coun. 320 School Counselling.................................................... 3 -
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 330</td>
<td>Ethics: Professional Issues and Personal Awareness</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 340</td>
<td>Advanced Skills in Group Facilitation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 350</td>
<td>Child Counselling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 360</td>
<td>Adolescent Counselling</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 370</td>
<td>Counselling Students with Special Education Needs</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 380</td>
<td>Addiction Counselling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLUS: All Departmental electives listed under Second Year

**Non-Departmental Electives** (must choose at least 6 credits from the following list)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 230</td>
<td>Consumer Behaviour</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 309</td>
<td>Human Resource Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 330</td>
<td>China Marketing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 440</td>
<td>Industrial Relations and Labour Law</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 323</td>
<td>The Economy of Contemporary China</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fren. 191</td>
<td>French I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fren. 192</td>
<td>French II</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 395</td>
<td>Social Media and Networked Communication</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 334</td>
<td>Sociology of Deviance</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 338</td>
<td>Juvenile Delinquency</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 371</td>
<td>Chinese Culture and Society</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLUS: All Non-Departmental electives listed under First and Second Years

**Total number of credits for Third Year courses**

Compulsory Courses: 9  
Departmental Electives: 15  
Non-Departmental Electives: 6  
Total: 30
Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 24)

Compulsory Courses
Advanced Level Course
Psy. 402-3    Research Thesis II & III .................................................. 3  3

Departmental and/or Non-Departmental Electives (must choose at least 18 credits from the following lists)

Departmental Electives
Counselling Courses
- Coun. 400  Chinese Psychology and Psychotherapy .................. 3  -
- Coun. 410  Alternative Approaches to Counselling.................... 3 (3)
- Coun. 420  Relationship Counselling ........................................ 3  -
- Coun. 430  Gerontological Counselling ................................... 3
- Coun. 440  Family Therapy ...................................................... 3  -
- Coun. 450  Career and Employment Counselling ...................... 3 (3)

PLUS: All Departmental electives listed under Second and Third Years

Non-Departmental Electives
All Non-Departmental electives listed under First, Second and Third Years

Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses
Compulsory Courses: 6
Departmental and/or Non-Departmental Electives: 18
Total: 24

Suggested Areas of Concentration
The required courses in all four years of the programme ensure that graduates obtain a thorough grounding in the core aspects of
Psychology. The range of electives, however, does allow the students to develop certain degrees of expertise in their chosen area(s) of interest. On the basis of the core and elective courses offered, four possible areas of concentration are suggested below.

**Business Psychology Concentration**

For students who wish to apply their knowledge of Psychology in the business world, the suggested electives listed below should give them adequate preparation to become management trainees.

- Bus. 230 Consumer Behaviour
- Coun. 450 Career and Employment Counselling
- PRA. 330 Advertising Strategies and Design
- Psy. 306 Business Psychology
- Psy. 309 Industrial and Organizational Psychology

**School Psychology Concentration**

For those who are interested in pursuing the education aspects of Psychology, the following electives are recommended.

- Coun. 320 School Counselling
- Coun. 370 Counselling Students with Special Education Needs
- Coun. 450 Career and Employment Counselling
- Psy. 307 Educational Psychology
- Psy. 320 Motivation and Learning

**Health and General Counselling Concentration**

Students who are interested in entering the health care or counselling sectors are advised to take the following electives.

- Coun. 200 Theories and Systems in Counselling and Psychotherapy
Coun. 210 Micro-Skills in Counselling and Psychotherapy
Coun. 310 Advanced Skills in Individual Counselling and Psychotherapy
Coun. 330 Ethics: Professional Issues and Personal Awareness
Psy. 209 Positive Psychology
Psy. 303 Health Psychology

**Research and Cognitive Science Concentration**

For students interested in research or Cognitive Psychology, the following electives are available.

Psy. 310 Advanced Cognitive Psychology
Psy. 311-2 Research Internship
Psy. 404¹ Psychology of Consciousness
Psy. 405¹ Human Neuropsychology
Psy. 406¹ Specific Issues in Neuroscience

¹ Not offered in 2013/14
Coun. 110 Personal Growth

1 Term; Non-Credit Bearing

This course aims at promoting self-awareness and developing essential ingredients of psychological health such as creativity, emotional and interpersonal competencies and the capacity to participate in community life. It helps to sensitize students to an understanding of themselves as individuals and as members of a social group, society or culture. At the individual level, a well-adjusted human being is one who is aware of her/his strengths and limitations as well as potentialities for growth.

Coun. 200 Theories and Systems in Counselling and Psychotherapy

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course provides a comprehensive and critical study of the major contemporary theories of counselling and psychotherapy. It also introduces the basic principles and interventions in counselling and their applications in professional counselling settings. Topics covered include the foundation and understanding of the philosophical bases of the helping process; professional helper's roles; code of ethics in the helping process; client's and helper's self-understanding and self-development; and facilitation of client change. All these topics are discussed within the cultural context of Hong Kong.

Basic theories include psychoanalytic therapy and its exten-
sions, existential therapy, person-centred therapy, behaviour therapy, cognitive behaviour therapy, rational-emotive therapy, reality therapy, postmodern approaches, and so on. Case comparisons and analyses are used throughout the course and students are also encouraged to conceptualize cases with the consideration of cultural factors.

Coun. 210 Micro-Skills in Counselling and Psychotherapy
1 Term; 3 Credits

This practice-based course will teach students the basic micro-skills used in effective counselling and psychotherapy. They will be expected to demonstrate their ability to use these skills during role-plays and other simulated settings. Both verbal and non-verbal skills are covered. Students will learn how to modify their skills in different stages of the counselling process and with clients from different age-groups and backgrounds. It is a highly interactive class, which requires students’ full participation and intensive practice outside the class as well.

Coun. 220 Cultural Diversity in Counselling and Psychotherapy
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to enhance students’ cultural sensitivity and competence in working with a “diverse” population such as that of Hong Kong. It explores the implications of diversity in psychotherapy and counselling in several ways. Firstly, studies that appreciate the nomothetic and idiographic nature of human society are examined. Secondly, the interrelatedness of cultural elements, such as personality, implicit assumptions, environmental and cultural factors which
affect the practice and utilization of psychotherapy and counselling across cultures will be addressed and appraised. Thirdly, the application of scientific inquiry and theoretical knowledge to identify common themes or elements of psychotherapy and counselling practice that are essential and useful across cultures is investigated. Fourthly, distinct approaches and elements that are primarily ethnoculturally based are explored so as to facilitate the students to have a better grasp of both the changes and benefits that cultural diversity brings to counselling practices.

**Coun. 230 Personal Experience as Counsellee**

*Non-Credit Bearing*

To become a proficient counsellor, it is essential to experience what it is like to be a counsellee through individual as well as group counselling process. This course enables students to understand the sort of expectations which counsellees have of their counsellors, thus facilitating the development of empathy and acceptance. It also provides an opportunity for the students to have reflective experience of the essential conditions that facilitate growth and promote positive outcomes in counselling.

**Coun. 240 Pre-internship in Counselling**

*Non-Credit Bearing*

Pre-internship provides students with opportunities to observe and participate in the counselling process as low-level operatives. This is a chance for them to become familiarized with the counselling environment, to understand the counselling process, to develop
an acute sense about the types of counselees that frequent the different settings, and to offer rudimentary counselling. It prepares students to enter the world of professional counselling.

**Coun. 310 Advanced Skills in Individual Counselling and Psychotherapy**

*1 Term; 3 Credits*

This course involves intensive advanced level training of counselling skills in a structured and experimental environment. Its focus is twofold: first in consolidating and building on basic listening skills while integrating these with techniques from counselling theories; second on guiding students to take responsibility for their own assumptions, values, beliefs and attitudes in the relationship building process. Students learn the process of counselling through small group exercises, reading with personal reflection, practice with audio recordings, writing case notes, and small group supervision.

**Coun. 320 School Counselling**

*1 Term; 3 Credits*

The purpose of this course is to get students acquainted with knowledge and skills essential to the counselling of children and adolescents in a school setting. The course provides an overview of relevant theories, concepts, techniques, as well as practical concerns for students who are interested in becoming practitioners of school counselling. Major areas covered include understanding school counselling as a profession, expected roles and work of school counsellors, programmes and services in schools, as well as relevant issues such as law, ethics, and so on.
Coun. 330 Ethics: Professional Issues and Personal Awareness

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course aims to introduce the process and models of ethical decision making. Self-awareness in relation to ethical and legal issues is emphasized, in view of the fact that although codes of ethics provide general standard, these guidelines are not sufficiently explicit to deal with every situation. It is often difficult to interpret ethical codes, and opinions differ over how to apply them in specific cases. Counsellors will therefore encounter many situations that demand the exercise of sound judgment to further the best interest of their clients. The definition and refinement of ethical issues is regarded as an evolutionary process that requires an open and self-critical attitude. Various codes of conduct published by local and overseas professional bodies will be compared, discussed and applied.

Coun. 340 Advanced Skills in Group Facilitation

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to help students plan psychoeducational groups and develop facilitation skills in group work. To reach this goal, the course challenges each student to integrate experiences of being a group member with learning group leadership skills. Therefore, each student’s own reflections of group experiences, self-awareness, knowledge of group processes and skills are all emphasized. The course gives an overview of the group process: stages of group development, ethical and professional issues.
Coun. 350 Child Counselling

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course enables the students to understand the principles and concepts of conducting child counselling. It provides knowledge about the developmental issues, deviations and problems of children. Students are taught how to conduct a psychological assessment of the child and recommend a treatment strategy. Special counselling models and techniques like play therapy, art therapy, behavioural therapy and bibliotherapy are introduced to equip students with the necessary tools to work with children either as individuals or in groups. In addition, students are sensitized to effect children’s changes through alliance with parents and utilizing familial resources.

Coun. 360 Adolescent Counselling

1 Term; 3 Credits

Counselling adolescents is different from counselling adults. This course aims to acquaint students with knowledge of theoretical and practical issues in working with adolescents. It will facilitate the students to examine concepts from different theories in working with adolescents. Areas of concern such as the biological development, personality development, identity formation and social challenges faced by the adolescent are addressed. Different theories, intervention strategies, methods of assessment and clinical techniques both for counselling adolescent individuals and groups are introduced throughout the course. In addition, knowledge about special prob-
lems such as juvenile delinquencies, drug use, and adolescent suicide are also included.

**Coun. 370 Counselling Students with Special Education Needs**

1 Term; 3 Credits

There is a fourfold purpose in this course: first, government’s current policies for students with special education needs (SENs) will be examined; second, services provided in educational and counselling contexts to students with SENs will be introduced; third, the assessment, education and treatment policies for the 3-Tier Intervention model will be addressed; and fourth, issues related to working with parents, professionals and para-professionals catering to the needs of students with SENs will be discussed.

**Coun. 380 Addiction Counselling**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is an introduction to the basic principles and knowledge of counselling for addictive behaviour and provides a broad understanding of the scope of practice and functions of an addiction counsellor in various settings. Students will contextualize the processes and behaviours of addiction within a range of conceptual frameworks (e.g. biogenetic, behavioural, systems, sociocultural, etc). Students will explore issues and factors related to a broad spectrum of addictions; including substance abuse, pathological gambling, computer addiction, workaholism, binging and compulsive overeating, relationship addiction, sex addiction, and pornographic addiction. Various approaches to treatment (e.g. 12-
step/AA, cognitive-behavioural, motivational interviewing, and others) will be reviewed, with an emphasis on assessment, treatment planning, maintenance and relapse prevention.

**Coun. 400 Chinese Psychology and Psychotherapy**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at making students aware of the indigenous system of counselling and psychotherapy inherent in the Chinese culture. It examines critically the applicability of Western psychotherapeutic theories and techniques to the Chinese population, and evaluates the ramifications of integrating Chinese psychotherapeutic systems with Western psychotherapy. By introducing the patterns of Chinese traditional psychotherapeutic practice, the course also assesses personality, environmental and cultural factors which influence the current practice and utilization of psychotherapy/counselling services in Chinese societies. Students are required to conduct independent projects to explore the psychotherapeutic elements inherent in the Chinese philosophies of Confucianism, Taoism and Buddhism as embedded in the Chinese classic and academic literature, folklores, modern and popular fictions, and arts.

**Coun. 410 Alternative Approaches to Counselling**

1 Term; 3 Credits

Having been firmly grounded in psychology and exposed to the theories, techniques and skills in counselling, students are ready to have their horizons broadened by being introduced to the creative and sometimes unconventional approaches to counselling and psychotherapy. These approaches may be used either as complements
to a predominantly verbal orientation or as the primary therapeutic methods in dealing with clients of all ages in a variety of settings such as schools, hospitals, social service agencies and mental health centres. The approaches covered in this course include: Psychodrama, Transactional Analysis, Art Therapy, Play Therapy, and so on. The course aims at offering students a wealth of practising resources.

Coun. 420 Relationship Counselling
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to enhance students’ sensitivity towards relationships and their competence in handling relationship issues within the counselling context. It explores the characteristics and stages of different relationships, what is required to approach others, how to look for approachability, how a person’s own past experience affects him/her in building his/her relationships. It provides a systematic knowledge about human relationship to students in helping them to improve their own relationship as well as counselling people with relationship difficulties, thus facilitating clients to build healthy relationship through various types of communication styles, identify obstacles to relationship growth, understand conflicts and develop conflict management styles, manage relationship changes and crises.

Coun. 430 Gerontological Counselling
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course prepares students to become advocates for posi-
tive, respectful and wellness-enhancing attitudes towards the elderly. It also teaches skills and techniques on providing professional counselling services to enhance self-sufficiency in the elderly. Major areas of study include: (a) foundations of gerontological counselling; (b) ethical and legal issues in counselling older persons; (c) normative experiences of aging; (d) impairment and the older persons; (e) techniques and methods of gerontological counselling; (f) special population situations and issues, including concerns towards abuse of the elderly, crimes against older persons, grief and loss, caregiving and singlehood, etc; and (g) needs and services of the older persons.

Coun. 440 Family Therapy

1 Term; 3 Credits

Families represent basic systems that affect human development. This course aims at acquainting students with a family framework for observing and conceptualizing different family issues and relational dynamics. It helps the students to exercise a critical appraisal of the major approaches in working with families and relationship and equips students to become a professional in family therapy. It provides students with an overview of family therapy including its historical development, classical models, and current changes. It is designed to present a broad coverage of family therapy models to familiarize students with different approaches and techniques.
Coun. 450 Career and Employment Counselling

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to introduce students to the meaning of work in one’s life and identity development, the concepts of career planning, and a holistic view of career decision making. Students will learn about the various career development models through engaging themselves in the experiential activities of career exploration and assessment. Also, the course will help students gain fundamental knowledge and skills in conducting career counselling and career intervention programs, as well as in writing resume and cover letter.

Coun. 461-2 Internship in Counselling

2 Terms; 8 Credits

Internship training places students in real counselling situations under the dual supervision of agency supervisors and university supervisors. Internship provides the opportunity to apply theories learnt in class, and skills practised both in class and during pre-internship training to real-life situations. It allows students to test the boundaries of their knowledge and skills, and is the formal opening to a career in counselling.

Psy. 100 Introductory Psychology

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide a panoramic view on the versatility and diversity in psychology. Students will be introduced to the major findings, theories and controversies in this field.

At the completion of the course, it is anticipated that students will be able to:
a) recognize and identify major schools and perspectives in psychology;
b) clearly differentiate between various research methods in psychology;
c) name major theories in various fields of psychology;
d) apply the skills of critical analysis;
e) work effectively as part of a team; and
f) correctly use in-text citations, quotation marks and create a References page conforming to APA style criteria.

Psy. 103 Statistics for Social Sciences

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course will introduce students to the fundamental concepts and principles for understanding and applying statistics in social and behavioural research. Students will learn how to employ appropriate statistical techniques and to compute applicable descriptive and inferential statistics with data at different levels of measurement. The course will also focus on teaching students how to appropriately organize, present, and interpret statistical results. Topics covered include basic concepts of statistics; measures of central tendency, dispersion, and association; probability and sampling theories; and hypothesis testing.

Psy. 110 Biological Bases of Behaviour

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces the physiology and anatomy of human nervous system to students, and explores how different biological systems regulate human behaviours. Research methodologies in
studying brain and behaviour are introduced to students. This allows students to understand research articles in the field, which illustrate the relationships between human nervous system and psychological behaviour.

**Psy. 120 Lifespan Developmental Psychology**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course aims at providing students with an overview of developmental psychology and helping them to understand how individuals change as they develop over time. In introducing different theoretical perspectives and research methods commonly used in the study of human development, a lifespan perspective will be used to illustrate the focal challenges faced by individuals at various stages of their lives. Special emphases will be placed on various forces in influencing individuals' growth and the cross-cultural application of theories in developmental psychology. In addition, students are encouraged to conduct related field research.

**Psy. 200 Social Psychology**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

As an introductory course, after completion students are expected to:

a) understand some important social phenomena, theories, research paradigms and empirical findings on some important and basic topics in contemporary social psychology;

b) know the latest development in social psychology from the cognitive-motivational perspective and the person in situation perspective; and
c) attempt to integrate the social psychological knowledge and apply them to understanding and improving daily life issues.

**Psy. 204 Personality and Individual Differences**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course offers students an introduction to the major psychological perspectives of personality development. Students will learn different ways of conceiving individual differences and/or similarities, based on empirical research and grounded theories on human development, personality classifications, and a variety of innate and learning mechanisms involved in the formation of traits and characters. Students will also study various approaches in understanding the universality and cultural-specific aspects of personality.

**Psy. 205 Cognitive Psychology**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at introducing the information processing approach in the study of human cognition and its central concepts to students. Methods and skills in investigating cognitive processes are introduced. Students are expected to conduct cognitive psychology experiments and write laboratory reports.
Psy. 206 Research Methods and Designs
1 Term; 3 Credits

Students in this course are expected to gain some understanding of the research process including research design, data collection, data interpretation and report writing. Students will conduct a research on their own so that they can have hands-on experience in generating research hypotheses, selecting the proper research method(s), using the right statistical tools to analyse their data and reporting their findings. Their presentation skills would also be polished while presenting their research findings and answering questions from their fellow classmates.

Psy. 207 History and Systems of Psychology
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims at promoting students’ understanding of the history of ideas in psychology. Through acquiring knowledge related to philosophical antecedents and empirical roots of those ideas or thoughts, students will develop a foundation for integrating various systems of psychology into their future work and practice.

Psy. 208 Psychoanalytic Concepts
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to introduce the historical development, basic concepts and techniques of psychoanalysis to students. Students are required to critically reflect upon the dialogues between psychoanalysis and other schools of psychology in a variety of areas including structures of the mind, psychic development, dreams, psy-
chopathology, psychotherapy, sexuality, and culture. Empirical findings relevant to the issues under enquiry will also be introduced.

Psy. 209 Positive Psychology

1 Term; 3 Credits

Traditionally, the foundation for Clinical and Counselling Psychology has been based on the psychopathological perspective. Positive Psychology is the most recent movement in psychology led by Martin Seligman, and represents a more positive way of viewing the human mind, personality, emotions and behaviour. This course will provide an introduction to the study of topics related to the positive aspects of human experience (e.g. strengths and virtues, mindfulness, hope, spirituality, resiliency). The course will first provide an overview of the history, definition, and significance of positive psychology. Then, the course will be dedicated to unpack the complex concepts of happiness and flourishing, and examining the mechanisms/factors that cause and maintain these two key components of positive psychology. Topics will be connected to their implications for increasing well-being throughout the course. The relevance and importance of applying positive psychology in Chinese societies will also be discussed.

Psy. 213 Computer-Assisted Data Analysis

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course gears towards equipping students with basic computer skills for conducting quantitative data analyses. Students will gain practical experience with SPSS (Statistical Products and Services Solution). They will get familiarized with the use of statistical
tests through workshop exercises.

**Psy. 214 Qualitative Research Methods**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at introducing data-collection methods and major schools in qualitative methodology. Data-collection methods include case study, naturalistic observation, systematic observation, interview, focus group, and participant-observation. Major schools include Grounded Theory, Ethnography, Investigative Phenomenology, Content Analysis, Frankfurt School, Feminist Critiques, Discourse Analysis, Conversational Analysis, and Action Research.

**Psy. 300 Abnormal Psychology**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course content will cover the most common disorders, such as anxiety disorders, mood disorders and schizophrenia, but also include lesser known disorders such as somatoform disorders and personality disorders. The course aims at providing students with a background of abnormal psychology by introducing the specific signs and symptoms associated with various psychopathologies, a range of contemporary thinking and research as well as traditional models concerning the diagnosis, causes, maintaining factors, treatment, and prevention of psychopathology. “Normal” personality development is contrasted with age-related and trauma-related differences and disturbances in personality functioning. Students will learn how to employ a multipath model to understanding mental illness, including biological, psychological, social and sociocultural elements.
Psy. 303 Health Psychology

1 Term; 3 Credits

This module aims to equip students with a broad knowledge of theoretical and practical issues in health psychology and a variety of related disciplines. Theories and concepts provide the basis for an integrated approach to understanding health and illness, and the interrelationship of psychological, social and biological factors. By comparing the psychoneurophysiological health perspective with the biomedical tradition, students will understand the distinctive contribution of psychological approaches to health and illness, and the ways in which these approaches complement biological and social approaches. The major topics are chosen to demonstrate how this integrated approach can be applied in daily health issues, including psychoneuroimmunology, psychological contributors to and treatments of illness, the experience of hospitalisation, health promotion and disease prevention.

Psy. 304 Psychological Assessment

1 Term; 3 Credits

*Psychological Assessment* equips students with knowledge of the latest trends, conceptual issues, and development of tools in the area of assessment. It also emphasizes ethical and effective application of such knowledge. The course is designed to enhance comprehension of the strengths and weaknesses of assessment and to help students develop a critical and imaginative approach of understanding human behaviour in an objective and systematic way.
Psy. 306 Business Psychology

1 Term; 3 Credits

Business Psychology is a practical discipline in which knowledge of business and knowledge of psychology are welded together to challenge and help organizations and their people. Organizations come into being in response to market needs, and grow when they are indeed responsive to market needs. This course focuses on utilizing systems and skills in psychology to gauge and create market needs, and gearing organizations towards becoming market-sensitive and market-driven.

Psy. 307 Educational Psychology

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course is designed to get student acquainted with psychology within the educational context. It aims to benefit those who major in psychology and/or engage in human service professions such as school counselling. Various topics being covered include understanding the learner and learning processes, individual differences, teaching methods, assessment in the classroom context and so on.

Psy. 308 Human Sexuality

1 Term; 3 Credits

Sexuality is an essential part of human behaviour that affects the global functioning of a person including the person’s gender role and identity, self-concept, social relationships and satisfaction of life. Human sexuality is an introductory course covering a wide range of social scientific perspectives on sexuality and it critically examines some of the controversial issues through the study of the most up-
to-date research. It also helps counselling students to discuss the matter in a perspective, comfortable and confident way when they journey into the suffering of their clients.

Psy. 309 Industrial and Organizational Psychology

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course concentrates on how psychological knowledge and methods can be applied in industrial and organizational settings. It focuses on applications of psychological principles to management and leadership training, executive training, the psychology of success, the commercial world and coping with different people at work. Particular topics on such matters as work description and performance appraisal, recruitment and selection techniques, group behaviour, staff development, motivation, leadership, research methods and future directions of I/O psychology are covered.

Psy. 310 Advanced Cognitive Psychology

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to engage students in exploring the unique characteristics of human mind’s functioning and provide students with an in-depth understanding of specific topics in cognitive psychology by reviewing classics articles in the field. Specific topics in cognitive psychology are introduced through discussion on related theories and issues. Students are expected to be capable of understanding research studies in cognitive psychology and their findings and implications to human cognition.

Psy. 311-2 Research Internship
2 Terms; 6 Credits

This whole-year course aims to provide an opportunity for students to familiarize themselves with research processes and settings and prepare for Psy. 401-3 Research Thesis. By actively participating in ongoing research projects led by the departmental teaching staff, students will gain hands-on research experience and transferrable working skills. They will also have opportunities to apply and consolidate their research skills acquired from the pre-requisite courses and develop advanced research techniques.

Psy. 320 Motivation and Learning

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at introducing various studies of human motivation and the corresponding learning behaviours. It covers various topics in drives, instincts, goals, self-control, self-regulation, emotion and motivation, and so on. Students are not only encouraged to understand people’s behaviours through various motivational frameworks, but also encouraged to acquire deep self-awareness, and apply motivational theories to their own lives, counselling practice or innovative researches in Hong Kong context.
Psy. 330 Advanced Social Psychology

1 Term; 3 Credits

After taking this advanced course, students are expected to:

a) understand further in depth some important phenomena or issues, ideas, theories, research paradigms and empirical findings on specific topics in contemporary social psychology;

b) become acquainted with the latest development in social psychology from the cognitive-motivational perspective and the person in situation perspective; and

c) integrate social psychological knowledge and apply it to understanding and tackling daily life issues.

Psy. 371-2 Research Project

2 Terms; 6 Credits

The objective of this course is to provide an opportunity for students to put into practice all the elements of psychological research including: problem identification, generation of hypotheses, conducting literature survey, designing the research, collecting data, testing the hypotheses and writing up the research report in accordance with APA stipulation.

Psy. 373-4 Capstone Project

2 Terms; 6 Credits

The main aims of the course are to integrate and synthesize counselling and psychology knowledge and skills; and to prepare students for analysing issues in the professional world. Students will
plan, conduct and write up an independent project. Although research-supported, the project does not aim to put into practice all the elements of psychological research; instead, emphasis is on an in-depth analysis of a professional issue, to apply ideas and practices encountered during the degree programme to a particular case study. When choosing and developing the project, students will undertake personal development planning to tailor it to their individual needs, interests and skills.

**Psy. 401-3 Research Thesis I, II & III**

**3 Terms; 9 Credits**

Research Thesis aims to provide an opportunity for students to conduct their research studies in psychology independently under the supervision of departmental staff. During the three-semester endeavour, students are required to go through the entire research process, including conceptualization of the thesis topic, conducting literature reviews, formulating research hypotheses, designing research methodology, collecting data, presenting findings and writing up their theses.

**Psy. 404 Psychology of Consciousness**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

The aim of this course is to provide a multi-disciplinary orientation to the study of consciousness. The mystery of consciousness has drawn a great deal of attention from a wide range of philosophers and scientists. Providing an integrated treatment of this huge topic as well as helping students approach the study of consciousness from different perspectives, the course comprises a series of
seminars which can be broadly divided into three strands: the current philosophical debate regarding consciousness, beliefs proposing "soul" as the seat of consciousness, and contemporary scientific understanding of altered states. The course emphasises critical analysis of all theories introduced as well as the exploration of one’s own approach to the problem of consciousness through subjective experience.

**Psy. 405 Human Neuropsychology**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at explaining how our neurological structure influences our behaviours. Through discussion on different daily activities, for example, how we learn and why feeling is unique, students can appreciate the delicate architecture of our body. Also topics on neurological disorders display what would result if certain parts of our brain is malfunctioning or damaged. In general, the aim of this course is to enable student to appreciate an interactive relationship between our daily life and the neurological processing.

**Psy. 406 Specific Issues in Neuroscience**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This is an advanced course explaining the relationships of human behaviours and neurological structures in specific aspects, including neurogenesis, research techniques, functional localization, cognitive and perceptual functioning, emotion and recovery of neuronal function. This course also aims at discussing some controversies about neuroscience and neuropsychology. Students will appre-
ciate the close linkage of human behaviour and neurological systems, as well as how their linkages are studied empirically.

**Psy. 410 Psychoanalytic Readings**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is essentially a follow-up to the course Psychoanalytic Concepts. Some manuscripts by major figures in the psychoanalytic tradition are selected and introduced to students. These major figures include Sigmund Freud, Anna Freud, John Bowlby, Karen Horney, Erich Fromm, Heinz Hartmann, Melanie Klein, Donald W. Winnicott, and Jacques M. Lacan. Students are invited to reflect on the challenges and suggestions imbedded in the selected psychoanalytic manuscripts by means of extensive group reading, discussions and debates.

**Psy. 411-2 Honours Research Project I & II**

2 Terms; 6 Credits

Honours Research Project is an alternative for students deciding not to take *Research Thesis* effective from 2013-2014. This course requires students to integrate their knowledge of psychology through the research process. Students conduct psychological studies on a specific domain in psychology and practice their research skills. Students choosing Honours Research Project are required to make up 3 credits by selecting a 3-credits departmental elective from a list of advanced departmental electives.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(SERVICE COURSES)

Coun. 110A  Personal Growth

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course aims at promoting self-awareness and developing essential ingredients of psychological health such as creativity, emotional and interpersonal competencies and the capacity to participate in community life. It helps to sensitize students to an understanding of themselves as individuals and as members of a social group, society or culture. At the individual level, a well-adjusted human being is one who is aware of her/his strengths and limitations as well as potentialities for growth.

Psy. 390  Psychopathology

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to expose the students to the diversity of the field highlighting the interactions among neurophysiological, psychodynamic, cognitive-behavioural and sociocultural factors in the study of psychopathology.

Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of Counselling and Psychology, please refer to their respective Departments for details.
Master of Social Sciences in Counselling Psychology

Programme Curriculum

First Semester (Total number of credits required: 12)

CP 514 Psychotherapy I ................................................................. 3
CP 516 Research Methods in Counselling Psychology .................. 3
CP 517 Cultural and Individual Diversity .................................... 3
CP 519 Assessment and Evaluation for Counselling Psychology I .. 3
Elective Course (Optional)* .......................................................... 3

Second Semester (Total number of credits required: 18-21)

CP 515 Psychotherapy II ............................................................... 3
CP 518\textsuperscript{1} Research Workshops and Seminars in Counselling Psychology or 3
CP 530\textsuperscript{2} Dissertation (Part I of III) ....................................(6)
CP 520 Assessment and Evaluation for Counselling Psychology II .. 3
CP 522 Professional Practice and Ethical Issues in Counselling Psychology ......................................................... 3
CP 524 Internship ....................................................................... 3

Clinical Practicum I (Choose one of the following courses)

CP 503 Cognitive Behaviour Therapy ........................................... 3
CP 504 Psychodynamic Psychotherapy ....................................... 3
Elective Course (Optional)* .......................................................... 3

Third Semester (Total number of credits required: 3)

Summer

CP 525 Externship I ................................................................. 3
Fourth Semester (Total number of credits required: 18)

CP 526 Externship II ................................................................. 3
CP 530\textsuperscript{1} Dissertation (Part I of II) or ........................................ 6
CP 531\textsuperscript{2} Dissertation (Part II of III) .................................................. (6)
CP 534 Specific Issues in Developmental Psychology .................. 3

Clinical Practicum II (Choose one of the following courses)
CP 501 Solution Focused Brief Therapy ........................................ 3
CP 502 Client-Centred Therapy ...................................................... 3

Clinical Seminar I (Choose one of the following seminars)
CP 505 Mental Health Counselling ................................................ 3
CP 507 School Psychology and Counselling ..................................... 3

Elective Course (Optional)* .......................................................... 3

Fifth Semester (Total number of credits required: 12)

CP 527 Externship III ................................................................. 3
CP 531\textsuperscript{1} Dissertation (Part II of II) or ........................................ 6
CP 532\textsuperscript{2} Dissertation (Part III of III) .................................................. (6)

Clinical Seminar II (Choose one of the following seminars)
CP 509 Vocational Psychology and Counselling ............................ 3
CP 511 Couple and Family Counselling ........................................... 3

Elective Course (Optional)* .......................................................... 3

* Elective Courses (Optional):
CP 550 Trauma Counselling .......................................................... 3
CP 555 Positive Health Psychology .................................................. 3
CP 557 Selected Topics in Psychopathology ...................................... 3
CP 559 Working with Addictive Behaviour ....................................... 3

The elective course will be offered if a sufficient number of students request it. Students may choose not to take any elective courses.

The total number of credits required for graduation is 63\textsuperscript{1} or 66\textsuperscript{2}. 
1 For cohorts entering from September 2013 onwards
2 For cohorts entering on or before September 2012
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(MSocSc PROGRAMME)

CP 501 Solution Focused Brief Therapy (Clinical Practicum)
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at familiarizing students with the practice of Solution Focused Brief Therapy (SFBT) in a number of therapeutic contexts such as couples therapy, family therapy, working with the mentally ill, and working with children/adolescents in schools. Students will be introduced to SFBT's historical roots, learn specific SFBT micro-skills and techniques, and demonstrate their competence in applying these skills with actual clients.

CP 502 Client-Centred Therapy (Clinical Practicum)
1 Term; 3 Credits

Client-Centred Therapy represents one of three original paradigms for the conduct of psychotherapy. Capitalizing on several growing trends in psychology (primarily Third Force psychology), Carl Rogers began to view the conduct of psychotherapy in a different light than was currently prominent at that time. The outcome of Rogers' views was the development of a new therapeutic methodology. Ultimately, his view of counselling and psychotherapy became a worldview (Person-Centred Psychology) of the human condition with a focus on the emotional development and well-being of people. This course explores the nature and elements of Client-Centred Therapy by having students practice the major skills of Client-Centred Therapy. Students are expected to acquire the concepts and skills necessary to be competent beginning therapists.
CP 503 Cognitive Behaviour Therapy (Clinical Practicum)  
1 Term; 3 Credits

Cognitive Behaviour Therapy is a major joining of two broad therapeutic approaches in Counselling Psychology. Cognitive Therapy and Behaviour Therapy combined has been found to be a much more powerful approach to helping individuals, couples and families change their life-styles (cognitions, affect, mood, behaviours and environment) than either approach by itself. This course strives to provide students with a broad sweep of theory, skills and techniques for their therapeutic arsenal. Ideally, the strategies and techniques drawn from Cognitive Behaviour Therapy will enable students from many different theoretical orientations work more effectively as counselling psychologists.

CP 504 Psychodynamic Psychotherapy (Clinical Practicum)  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of this course is to equip students with basic skills in psychodynamic psychotherapy. After completion of the course, students would have built a foundation in psychodynamic therapeutic skills such as dream analysis, free association, transference analysis, acting-out, working through and so on. More importantly, students will be able to describe the aetiology of neurosis and psychosis in psychodynamic perspective.
CP 505 Mental Health Counselling (Clinical Seminar)  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is one of four practice settings (CP505 Mental Health Counselling, CP507 School Psychology and Counselling, CP509 Vocational Psychology and Counselling, and CP511 Couple and Family Counselling). Students are to choose two of the four settings, and develop some expertise in their chosen areas. Students choosing the Mental Health Counselling sequence will be given the opportunity to integrate this course into their Internship and Externship. Students will also be provided with content demonstrating clinical work in community settings. Students must then translate what they have learned within the context of the course as it applies to their Internship and Externship experiences. Students are highly required to exercise their critical thinking skills in relate to mental health counselling context. Within the class structure, students will first learn the skills in terms of management as well as conceptualizing cases based on various clinical vignettes plus discussions on their own counselling experiences, and then they are expected to apply the skills outside the classroom.

CP 507 School Psychology and Counselling (Clinical Seminar) 1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is one of four clinical seminars (CP505 Mental Health Counselling, CP507 School Psychology and Counselling, CP509 Vocational Psychology and Counselling, and CP511 Couple and Family Counselling). It is designed to introduce students to school psychology and counselling, an area where the practice of counselling psychology is considered to be of central importance to
the integrated approach now commonly adopted in most schools in Hong Kong. Students will be provided with content demonstrating clinical work in the Hong Kong school system, and they are expected to translate what they have learnt and integrate it into their Externship experiences.

**CP 509 Vocational Psychology and Counselling (Clinical Seminar)**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is one of the programme’s four clinical seminars (CP505 Mental Health Counselling, CP507 School Psychology and Counselling, CP509 Vocational Psychology and Counselling, and CP511 Couple and Family Counselling). It is designed to introduce students to vocational psychology, which is the specialty of Counselling Psychology. Students are provided the opportunity to apply the learning of this course to their Externship. Through case discussion, case presentations, and experiential learning activities, the students would learn the positivist and post-modern career counselling and assessment approaches. They are also equipped with the knowledge and skills in providing career-oriented outreach services to individuals of diverse contexts.

**CP 511 Couple and Family Counselling (Clinical Seminar)**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course focuses on counselling couples with relationship, lifestyle, psychological, social, work, and other related problems. Family dynamics and therapy are integrated into appropriate treat-
ment designs. The course represents a systemic approach to ther-
apy. Both theory and practice will be emphasized.

**CP 514-515 Psychotherapy I & II**

2 Terms; 6 Credits

These two courses cover four theoretical approaches to psy-
chotherapy, as well as crisis intervention and group dynamics. These two course aim to provide the most fundamental concept of commonly used counselling approaches. The knowledge provided in these two courses will prepare students for the Clinical Practicum sequence in which students are required to focus on two ap-
proaches to psychotherapy.

(Students have four choices: CP501 Solution Focused Brief Ther-
apy, CP502 Client-Centred Therapy, CP503 Cognitive Behaviour Ther-
apy, and CP504 Psychodynamic Psychotherapy.)

**CP 516 Research Methods in Counselling Psychology**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at introducing research concepts and tech-
niques in counselling psychology to students. Students will learn and apply observation skills, interview techniques, research de-
signs, methods of quantitative and qualitative data analysis com-
monly used in counselling psychology. Besides, students will have actual experience in writing a critical literature review, doing a presentation and writing an APA-style report.

**CP 517 Cultural and Individual Diversity**

1 Term; 3 Credits
This course is designed to facilitate students’ self-awareness, which is of importance to the professional development of counselling psychologists. During the course, students will engage in various experiential and didactic activities in order to increase their awareness, sensitivity, critical thinking, and knowledge about the different facets of diversity at both individual and cultural levels.

**CP 518 Research Workshops and Seminars in Counselling Psychology**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course will first review what students have learnt in **CP516 Research Methods in Counselling Psychology**. Advanced statistical analyses will then be introduced and students will practice the skills in workshops. In the second half of this course, students will discuss research designs in counselling psychology in seminars. They will reflect their understandings in writing a formal research proposal by the end of this course.

**CP 519 Assessment and Evaluation for Counselling Psychology I**

1 Term; 3 Credits

**CP519**, which is the first of a two-course sequence on assessment, offers students the opportunity to learn to administer and interpret intelligence tests (Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children – 4th Edition (Chinese Version – Taiwan) & Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale – 3rd Edition (Chinese Version – Taiwan)), and write reports based on outcomes of testing. In addition, students will examine and administer the Mini Mental State Examination-2 (Chinese

**CP 520  Assessment and Evaluation for Counselling Psychology II**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is the second of a two-course sequence of CP 519, and is structured to equip students to begin their internship at the in-house counselling centre during the semester. Students will acquire knowledge and skills in the process of intake interviewing, suicide/homicide risk assessment, screening assessment (i.e. SCL-90-R), personality assessment (i.e. NEO-PI-R), and vocational assessment (i.e. Knowdell Career Values Card Sort). Students will also establish integration and clinical judgment skills in writing assessment reports as well as providing treatment recommendations based on the obtained assessment data.

**CP 522  Professional Practice and Ethical Issues in Counselling Psychology**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The major aim of this course is to help students develop a sense of identity and commitment to the profession of counselling, supported by developing a foundation in ethical understanding and practices. The course addresses an assortment of issues, including what it means to be a professional in the field of counselling and the
factors involved in maintaining a professional standard. Students will learn what the ethical standards are and grapple with the variety of factors that need to be considered when applying these standards. Ethical controversies will be explored, as well as common issues that arise in the practice of counselling. The impact of legal regulations and their relationship to ethical standards will also be covered. Students will be encouraged to apply their knowledge to real world examples with their clients.

**CP 524 Internship**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

Internship provides students with clinical experience simulating real clinical environments under close and intensive supervision. Students are required to have practicum at the Counselling and Research Centre (CRC) of the University, and undertake the full gamut of Counselling Psychology tasks, including conducting clinical interviews, performing psychological assessment, writing intake assessment reports, preparing treatment plans and group counselling proposals, and delivering intervention. Students will have ample opportunities to consolidate their clinical and conceptualisation skills, and become more familiarised with professional issues.

**CP 525-527 Externship I, II & III**

**3 Terms; 9 Credits**

There are three externships, each lasting 26 days, making a total of 78 days or 690 hours. Externship provides students with various opportunities to integrate and apply theories and practice in Counselling Psychology in real life settings. With the input of group
and individual supervision throughout the externships, students are encouraged to develop their theoretical approach to psychotherapy and to establish their professional competence and professional identities as counselling psychologists.

**CP 530-532 Dissertation I, II & III**

3 Terms; 18 Credits

This course aims to engage students in conducting their own research studies in counselling psychology independently under the supervision of departmental staff. Students are required to demonstrate their ability in formulating research hypotheses, conduct research studies in psychology, present research findings and write their dissertations in APA format.

**CP 534 Specific Issues in Developmental Psychology**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at providing students the opportunity to lead and participate in scholarly discussions of societal and clinical issues relevant to developmental psychology, ranging from the stage of childhood, adolescence, early adulthood, to late adulthood, as well as to the Hong Kong/Chinese context.

**CP 550 Trauma Counselling**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at increasing students’ understanding of the varieties of traumatic experience and their distinctive biological, psychological and socio-familial impact on the victims. Students will be
introduced to the diagnosis of PTSD and the major treatment/counselling approaches for working with traumatized populations. They will learn to critically and reflectively evaluate the literature associated with trauma counselling, as well as to develop the ability to formulate a case and make plans for treatment.

**CP 555 Positive Health Psychology**

1 Term; 3 Credits

In the light of contemporary culturally relevant fields of health psychology and positive psychology, this course is designed to enhance students' knowledge of the theory, application and evaluation of a variety of interventions specifically designed to enhance quality of life and wellbeing. In addition, students will explore the value of constructs such as subjective wellbeing, happiness, positive emotions, character strengths and locus of control, and develop skills to promote positive health psychology for themselves and their clients.

**CP 557 Selected Topics in Psychopathology**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at exposing students to a range of selected topics on psychopathology that represents the dominant manifestation of mental disorders in Hong Kong. Students will be engaged in controversial discussion on the diagnosis, aetiology and treatment of these selected disorders. Additionally, students will have the opportunity to review alternate perspectives in conceptualizing mental disorders other than the traditional categorical approach suggested by the DSM-IV-TR.
CP 559 Working with Addictive Behaviour

1 Term; 3 Credits

The purpose of this course is to introduce students to the addiction process and to methods of providing treatment. The course will look at several historical views of addictions. The overall process of establishing an addiction will be examined with an overview of differences in the types of addiction (e.g. eating disorders, gambling, drugs). Family dynamics and dysfunctionality also play an important role in establishing and maintaining addiction, so family behaviour will be examined. Methods and types of treatment will be examined, and several of the major strategies and techniques will be practised.
# Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology

## Programme Curriculum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trimester</th>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First Trimester (Total number of credits: 6)</strong></td>
<td>PSY 110P</td>
<td>Biological Bases of Behaviour</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PSY 120P</td>
<td>Lifespan Developmental Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second Trimester (Total number of credits: 6)</strong></td>
<td>PSY 103P</td>
<td>Statistics for Social Sciences</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PSY 320P</td>
<td>Motivation and Learning</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third Trimester (Total number of credits: 6)</strong></td>
<td>PSY 200P</td>
<td>Social Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PSY 206P</td>
<td>Research Methods and Designs</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fourth Trimester (Total number of credits: 9)</strong></td>
<td>PSY 204P</td>
<td>Personality and Individual Differences</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PSY 205P</td>
<td>Cognitive Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PSY 371P</td>
<td>Research Project I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fifth Trimester (Total number of credits: 6)</strong></td>
<td>PSY 300P</td>
<td>Abnormal Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PSY 372P</td>
<td>Research Project II</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The total number of credits required for graduation is 33.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(PGDP PROGRAMME)

PSY 103P  Statistics for Social Sciences
1 Trimester; 3 Credits
The aim of this course is to introduce students to the principles and interpretation of statistics. Topics covered include basic concepts of statistics; the measures of central tendency, dispersion and association; probability and sampling theories; and hypothesis testing.

PSY 110P  Biological Bases of Behaviour
1 Trimester; 3 Credits
This course introduces the physiology and anatomy of human nervous system to students, and explores how different biological systems regulate human behaviours. Research methodologies in studying brain and behaviour are introduced to students, which allow students to understand research articles in the field. Students will be able to appreciate the relationships between human nervous system and psychological behaviour after this course.

PSY 120P  Lifespan Developmental Psychology
1 Trimester; 3 Credits
This course aims at providing students with an overview of the field of developmental psychology. The major focus of the course will be on understanding how individuals change as they develop over time. In addition to studying the different theoretical perspectives and research methods commonly used in the study of human
development, a lifespan perspective will be used to introduce the focal challenges faced by individuals at various stages of their lives. Special emphasis will be placed on appreciating the significance of the context within which individuals develop, the bidirectional nature of developmental influences, and the cross-cultural application of the theories in developmental psychology. Students will further gain hands-on experience by conducting field research.

**PSY 200P Social Psychology**

1 Trimester; 3 Credits

This course introduces key social psychological theories and research relating to the societal context; their relevance to daily life; and how to acquire social psychological knowledge through scientific investigation. The course begins with a general introduction to social psychology and its methodology, and then proceeds to interesting psychological phenomena on the social self; social perception; social relations such as persuasion, conformity and prejudice; and applications to the real world. The course will provide practical experience in carrying out social research, and encourage a critical awareness of the topic.

**PSY 204P Personality and Individual Differences**

1 Trimester; 3 Credits

This course offers students an introduction to the major psychological perspectives of personality development. Students will learn different ways of conceiving individual differences and/or sim-
ilarities, based on empirical research and grounded theories on hu-
man development, personality classifications, and a variety of innate 
and learning mechanisms involved in the formation of traits and 
characters.

**PSY 205P  Cognitive Psychology**
1 Trimester; 3 Credits

This course aims at introducing the information processing ap-
proach in the study of human cognition and its central concepts to 
students. Methods and skills in investigating cognitive processes are 
also introduced. Students will also conduct cognitive psychology ex-
periment and write laboratory reports.

**PSY 206P  Research Methods and Designs**
1 Trimester; 3 Credits

This course aims at fostering students’ acquisition of research-
related knowledge, attitude and skills. Students will be equipped 
with basic concepts, ethical awareness in research-related deci-
sions and understandings of theoretical principles on which scientific 
research is based. Throughout the course, they will also gain prac-
tical experience of designing, conducting and reporting their group 
research projects.

**PSY 300P  Abnormal Psychology**
1 Trimester; 3 Credits

This course will provide background on the most common psy-
chological disorders (i.e. anxiety disorders, depression and schizo-
phrenia), but also include other disorders such as somatoform and
personality disorders. The course aims at providing students with knowledge of abnormal psychology through introducing the specific signs and symptoms associated with various psychopathologies, a range of contemporary thinking and research as well as different traditional models concerning the diagnosis, causes, maintaining factors, treatment, and prevention of psychopathology. “Normal” personality development is contrasted with age-related and trauma-related differences and disturbances in personality functioning. Cultural issues in abnormal psychology are also addressed.

**PSY 320P  Motivation and Learning**

1 Trimester; 3 Credits

This course aims at introducing various studies of human motivation and the corresponding learning behaviours. Both theoretical concerns and empirical evidence will be covered in this course. Through the discussion on intrinsic and extrinsic motivation, an explanatory framework can be established in understanding our different behaviours, including aggression, performance, arousal, sexual behaviours and hedonism, and the like. A general aim of this course is to enable us to acquire a deep awareness of one of the perspectives in understanding the root(s) of our behaviours.

**PSY 371P-372P Research Project I & II**

2 Trimesters; 6 Credits

The objective of this course is to provide an opportunity for students to put into practice all the elements of psychological research including: problem identification, generation of hypotheses, conducting literature survey, designing the research, collecting data,
testing the hypotheses and writing up the research report in accordance with APA stipulation.
Department of Economics and Finance

The Department is administering two programmes in the 2013/14 academic year: the Bachelor of Arts with Honours in Economics and Finance programme, and the Co-operative Programme with University of Leicester. For detailed information about these programmes, please visit the departmental website at http://www.hksyu.edu/economics.

The 4-year BA (Hons.) in Economics and Finance programme adopts a broad-based approach that concentrates on Economics and Finance while embracing Business and General Education. The aim of this programme is to cultivate well-rounded graduates with a solid general foundation in Economic and Finance theories and an ability to apply them to the decision making process in the workplace. The course lists for the Economics and Finance programme appear below:

Bachelor of Arts (Hons.) in Economics and Finance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

First Year (Total number of credits required: 38)

Language Requirements

| Chi. 101-2 | First Year Chinese | 4 | 4 |
Eng. 111-2 English Usage ........................................................... 3 3

**Departmental Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 103</td>
<td>Basic Microeconomics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 104</td>
<td>Basic Macroeconomics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 113</td>
<td>Mathematics for Economics and Finance</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 114</td>
<td>Economic Statistics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required Complementary Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 100</td>
<td>Financial Accounting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Business</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 180</td>
<td>Introduction to the Study of the PRC</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phil. 113</td>
<td>Logic</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total number of credits for First Year courses**

- Language Requirements: 14
- Departmental Requirements: 12
- Required Complementary Courses: 12
- Total: 38

**Second Year (Total number of credits required: 32-38)**

**Language Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 131-2</td>
<td>Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates) #</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 211-2</td>
<td>English Writing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Exemption is allowed from Chi. 131-2 based on an exemption test held in late August.

**Departmental Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 203</td>
<td>Intermediate Microeconomics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 204</td>
<td>Intermediate Macroeconomics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 213</td>
<td>Introductory Econometrics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 233</td>
<td>The Economy of Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 205</td>
<td>Foundations of Finance</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 245</td>
<td>Introduction to Corporate Finance</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Departmental Electives (choose 3-6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 223</td>
<td>The History of Chinese Economy</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 244</td>
<td>Managerial Economics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 243</td>
<td>Money and Banking</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complementary Electives (choose 3-6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 130</td>
<td>Principles of Marketing</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 200</td>
<td>Business Organization and Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 220</td>
<td>Quantitative Methods for Business</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 250</td>
<td>Organizational Behaviour</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comp. 204</td>
<td>Web Page Development</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 140</td>
<td>Introduction to Translation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 153</td>
<td>Introduction to Cultural Studies</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 100</td>
<td>General Chinese History</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 240</td>
<td>History of Hong Kong</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 241</td>
<td>From Colony to SAR: Reunification &amp; Challenges in Contemporary Hong Kong</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 252</td>
<td>Globalization and China</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Journalism &amp; Mass Communication</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 120</td>
<td>Introduction to Political Science</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 121</td>
<td>International Relations and Organizations</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 221-2</td>
<td>News Reporting and Writing in Chinese</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 260</td>
<td>Computer Graphic Design and Publishing</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 110</td>
<td>Introduction to Law</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.E. 103</td>
<td>Physical Education</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.E. 104</td>
<td>Physical Education</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phil. 103</td>
<td>Introduction to Philosophy</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 100</td>
<td>Introductory Psychology</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 103</td>
<td>Introduction to Anthropology</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Soc. 107 Understanding Sociology................................. 3 (3)
Soc. 150 Critical Thinking.............................................. 3 (3)
Soc. 204 Cultures in the Contemporary World................. 3 -
Soc. 208 Hong Kong Society and Culture........................ 3 -
Soc. 255 Philosophy through Film and Literature............... 3 -

**Total number of credits for Second Year courses**

- Language Requirements: 8
- Departmental Requirements: 18
- Departmental Electives: 3-6
- Complementary Electives: 3-6
- Total: 32-38

**Third Year (Total number of credits required: 30-32)**

**Departmental Requirements**

- Econ. 323 The Economy of Contemporary China........... 3 -
- Econ. 333 Asia-Pacific Economies................................. 3 -
- Econ. 334 International Economics............................ 3 -
- Econ. 346 Issues in Development Economics................ 3 -
- Fin. 330 International Finance................................. 3 -

**Departmental Electives (9 credits)**

**Economics Electives** (choose at least 3 credits)

- Econ. 303 History of Economic Thought.................... 3 -
- Econ. 313 Mathematical Economics........................... 3 -
- Econ. 314 Economic Forecasting............................... 3 -
- Econ. 315 Economic Modeling................................... 3 -
- Econ. 335 Urban and Regional Economics.................... 3 -
- Econ. 343 Economics of Industrial Organization............ 3 -
- Econ. 344 Public Finance......................................... 3 -
- Econ. 345 Economics of Innovation and Entrepreneurship... 3 -
Finance Electives (choose at least 3 credits)

Fin. 343 Microfinance .............................................................. 3 -
Fin. 347 Introduction to Financial Derivatives ........................... - 3
Fin. 348 Global Banking ........................................................... - 3
Fin. 349 Wealth Management and Planning ........................... 3 -

Complementary Electives (choose 6-8 credits)

Bus. 230 Consumer Behaviour................................................. 3 (3)
Bus. 303B Business Communication .......................................... 3 (3)
Bus. 305 Operations Management ........................................... 3 -
Bus. 310 Estate and Retirement Planning ................................. 3 (3)
Bus. 318 Game Theory in Business Decision ............................ 3 (3)
Bus. 330 China Marketing ...................................................... 3 -
Chi. 251-2 Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates) .............. 1 1
Chi. 360 Bibliography ............................................................. 3 -
Eng. 335 Popular Culture ....................................................... 3 -
Hist. 370 The Developmental Experience of Modern Western Economic Powers: Study of Selected Cases .................. 3 (3)
PRA. 320 Public Relations Disciplines ..................................... - (3)
PRA. 330 Advertising Strategies and Design .............................. - (3)

AND: All Complementary Electives listed under Second Year

Total number of credits for Third Year courses

Departmental Requirements: 15
Departmental Electives: 9
Complementary Electives: 6-8
Total: 30-32
Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 24-27)

**Departmental Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 433</td>
<td>Seminar on Global Financial Environment</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 443</td>
<td>Financial Economics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Departmental Electives (9 credits)**

**Economics Electives (choose at least 3 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 423</td>
<td>Trade, FDI and International Technology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 434</td>
<td>International Investment and Transnational Corporations</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 445</td>
<td>Comparative Economic Systems</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 446</td>
<td>Honours Project</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Finance Electives (choose at least 3 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 410</td>
<td>Financial Data Analysis</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 423</td>
<td>Financial Risk Analysis and Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 424</td>
<td>Financial Services in China</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 444</td>
<td>Financial Institutions in Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 445</td>
<td>Regulation and Management of Financial Institutions in Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AND: All Departmental Electives listed under Third Year**

**Complementary Electives (choose 9-12 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 405</td>
<td>Tax Planning</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 406</td>
<td>Insurance</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 408</td>
<td>Asia Pacific Management Issues</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 409</td>
<td>China Investment</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 410</td>
<td>Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 417</td>
<td>International Business</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 480</td>
<td>Business Ethics &amp; Corporate Social Responsibility</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 440</td>
<td>Hong Kong and the Pearl River Delta: Economic and Social Change since 1978</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Jour. 420  Press Policy and Law of China................................. (3)
Jour. 460  Digitization and Interactive Multimedia..................... 3 (3)

AND: All Complementary Electives listed under Second and Third Years

Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses
Departmental Requirements: 6
Departmental Electives: 9
Complementary Electives: 9-12
Total: 24-27
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(BA DEGREE PROGRAMME)

Econ. 103 Basic Microeconomics
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to offer a broad coverage of microeconomic principles essential to an understanding of the economic activities of households, business organizations and governments. It also equips students with the ability to apply microeconomic theory to critically analyse and evaluate social issues from economic perspectives.

Econ. 104 Basic Macroeconomics
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at equipping students with the understanding of the principles and concepts of macroeconomics. The structure of the course follows a standard pattern involving topics like fiscal policy, monetary policy, economic growth, open economy and business cycles. Upon completion of this course, students will be able to acquire a well-balanced foundation for evaluating macroeconomic issues.

Econ. 113 Mathematics for Economics and Finance
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide first year students a quantitative foundation in mathematics for business and economic analysis, equip students with knowledge in various quantitative techniques applicable to economic and business problems and enable students
to interpret the analytical results.

**Econ. 114 Economic Statistics**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course aims to develop in students an understanding of the techniques of data analysis and presentation, the ideas of probability and probability distributions, the techniques of statistical estimation and hypothesis testing, and of their application to Economics. Classes are designed to develop skills in numeracy, problem solving and the use of Excel and SPSS.

**Econ. 203 Intermediate Microeconomics**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**

The course aims to offer an in-depth treatment of microeconomic theory in order to explore the relationship between economic analysis and human behaviour. It also equips students with the ability to apply key theories of microeconomics to analyse and resolve real-world issues. In addition to core elements of microeconomics, innovative topics, such as game theory, economics of uncertainty and information economics, will be discussed.

**Econ. 204 Intermediate Macroeconomics**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course aims to use economic models to develop students’ understanding of the nature of macroeconomics at the intermediate level and the role of fiscal and monetary policies in the economic system. Apart from the standard topics like rational expectation, behavioural foundation, unemployment and inflation, the course also
follows modern approaches to place substantial weight on economic growth and international political economy. Upon completion of this course, students would have acquired the ability to understand how economic growth determines the wealth of nations in today’s global economy.

Econ. 213 Introductory Econometrics

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to introduce the fundamental tools in econometrics and develop students’ ability to apply the theoretical concepts and techniques learned in lectures to the analysis of economic phenomena. Upon completion of this course, students will have gained experience in working with economic data, an understanding of the econometric techniques for the analysis of economic data, and practical experience from applying econometric methods in computer-based packages such as Eviews and SPSS.

Econ. 223 The History of Chinese Economy

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course is divided into three parts. The first part provides a general description of the economic development of China since ancient times. It gives students an understanding of the trends of Chinese economic development and the principles underlying the economic changes. The second part focuses on some of the important Chinese economic issues. The selected topics are studied in depth and it is expected that students will be able to learn some of the economic research methods used. The last part deals with selected economic readings. It is hoped that students will develop the ability
to appreciate ancient Chinese economic literature.

**Econ. 233 The Economy of Hong Kong**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to help students acquire a better grip on economic theory as it applies to phenomena and problems pertinent to the economy of Hong Kong, develop their ability to search and synthesize relevant material, and present arguments clearly and concisely both in writing and orally. Upon completion of this course, students should be able to understand the macroeconomic policy framework of Hong Kong, the competitiveness in service and manufacturing industries, the economic integration of Hong Kong and China, the socio-economic issues in today's Hong Kong; and to apply economic concepts to analyse local economic problems.

**Econ. 244 Managerial Economics**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to equip students with the ability to apply economic thinking on business decision to a range of practical issues. It provides a range of transferable skills (including communication, problem solving, self-learning, self-management, working with others, computing and statistics) as an integral part of the study of Managerial Economics that are relevant to a wide range of careers and/or further studies.

**Econ. 303 History of Economic Thought**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to offer an in-depth treatment of the evolution
of economic thinking. Emphasis is placed upon how the theories and methods of the past have influenced contemporary economics. Discussions will chronicle the progress of economic ideas and philosophies from ancient to modern times. The major tenets of various schools of western economic thought will be explored. Students will be trained to evaluate the contributions of economic thinkers and apply the arguments from major schools of thought to current economic issues.

**Econ. 313 Mathematical Economics**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to provide an introduction to mathematical analysis in economics, thus providing insights into modern methods of economic analysis. The course concentrates on some particular mathematical techniques, followed by illustrations of how these techniques are useful in enhancing understanding of different areas of economics. Major topics covered are as follows: introduction and convex subsets, maxima and minima of functions, concave programming, homogeneous functions, the utility maximization problem, the profit-maximization problem, the cost-minimization problem, and the application of differential and difference equations.
Econ. 314 Economic Forecasting  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with rigorous training in forecasting macroeconomic variables. The focus of this course is time-series modeling and forecasting which is concerned with the building of a stochastic model for linear univariate time series in the time-domain rather than causal modeling. Major topics covered are as follows: forecasting perspective, forecasting with a single-equation regression model, trend analysis, decomposition method, exponential smoothing, the ARIMA model, and the use of forecasting methods in practice.

Econ. 315 Economic Modeling  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with moderately complex econometric models to understand contemporary issues in economics and finance and help students to understand how the empirical techniques can be applied on real data, and provide the necessary background to evaluate empirical findings reported in economic literature. Major topics include: A Misspecification (Diagnostic) Testing, Dynamic Models, Regression Analysis with Time Series Data, Discrete and Limited Dependent Variable Models, Pooling Cross-Section/Time Series Data Methods, and Simultaneous-Equation Models.

Econ. 323 The Economy of Contemporary China  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course will focus on the historical development of China’s
economic institutions, its varying economic policies and strategies, and in particular how economic reform affected different sectors of the Chinese economy. Considerable time will be spent on discussion of current economic issues in China.

Upon completion of this course, students will be able to:

a) outline the economic history of the PRC;
b) identify the process of the PRC’s economic development;
c) describe the general business environment in the PRC; and
d) analyse current economic issues in the PRC and provide policy suggestions.

Econ. 333 Asia-Pacific Economies

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to equip students with an understanding of economic development of Asia-Pacific economies. Upon completion of this course, students will:

a) acquire knowledge about economic conditions and business systems in the Asia-Pacific region;
b) think in a critical manner and evaluate Asia-Pacific economic issues including economic performance, achievements and problems; and
c) acquire a well-balanced general knowledge of the Asia-Pacific region including cooperation, competition and conflicts among countries in the region.

Econ. 334 International Economics

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to use economic models to develop students’
understanding of the nature of international economics and the role of fiscal and monetary policy in the international economic system.

Econ. 335 Urban and Regional Economics

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to examine the theory of location choice, city models, urban problems and regional development; factors influencing urban growth and hierarchies, land use patterns, measures and changes in regional economic activity; public policy issues in regional and urban evolution. Major topics covered are as follows: market forces in the development of cities, theory of firm location and agglomeration effect, urban growth and city size, regional disparity and development, zoning and growth control, as well as selected urban problems including housing, transportation, public health, crime, education and amenities.

Econ. 343 Economics of Industrial Organization

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course provides students with concepts of entrepreneurship, the market process and transaction costs in addition to traditional industrial organization theories to enable them to understand the behaviour of firms and industries. Students will learn alternative views of market and competition, pricing and competitive strategies, mergers and vertical integration, business franchising, trade secrets and patents, advertising and industrial policies.

Econ. 344 Public Finance

1 Term; 3 Credits
The course aims to provide students with a solid grounding in public economics with emphasis on the taxing and spending activities of governments and their influence on resource allocation and income distribution. Focuses are also placed upon how the theory can be applied to a broad range of current public finance issues. Major topics covered are as follows: tools of public finance, externalities, public goods, theory of political economy, income distribution and welfare spending programmes, cost-benefit analysis, a framework for taxation analysis, taxation and individual behaviours, fiscal federalism and multi-government public finance, and public finance in Hong Kong.

**Econ. 345 Economics of Innovation and Entrepreneurship**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course will introduce theory and practice of innovation and entrepreneurship in economic aspects. It aims to provide students with an opportunity to examine in depth the origins of innovations and the consequences of their adoption; it also aims to provide students with a cross-disciplinary perspective in exploring the role of entrepreneurial activities in society, especially entrepreneurs’ contribution to economic aspects of innovation and technological advances. The relationship of entrepreneurship versus social structure, psychological and economic motivations are also the main foci of this course.
Econ. 346 Issues in Development Economics
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course reviews economic and social issues in the world’s economic development. The impact of globalization on developing and emerging economies is critically analysed. The course also covers issues such as entrepreneurship and institutions; path dependence and modular production system; global financial crisis and its impacts on the world economy; income inequality, environmental issues and sustainable development.

Econ. 423 Trade, FDI & International Technology Transfer in China
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to study the contributions of foreign trade, foreign direct investment (FDI) and international technology transfer to the economic development of China. It also aims to provide a simple framework in analysing the roles of foreign trade, FDI and international technology transfer in different stages of economic development in China since the 1970s.

Econ. 434 International Investment & Transnational Corporations
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course surveys the theories and practices of multinational enterprises (MNE) in the global economy. It examines the evolution of the MNE and alternative contractual arrangements (exporting, licensing, franchising, international acquisitions, joint ventures and strategic alliances); theories of the internationalization process and foreign direct investment. It also discusses the relationship between
multinational corporations and governments, and the impact of cultural differences on international business transactions and international management.

**Econ. 445 Comparative Economic Systems**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with an overall and comprehensive understanding of how economic systems work through a comparative study of economic system models and selected economies. Upon completion of this course, students should be able to describe the basic institutions of a society and economy and identify the features that distinguish economic systems; to explain the four economist’s approaches to economic systems and their impacts on contemporary economic systems; to critically evaluate how economic systems work and how economic theory interacts with government policy, history and culture to explain economic performance; and to use a comparative approach to analyse the economic performance of different economic systems.

**Econ. 446 Honours Project**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course enables students to crystallize what they have learnt in the programme. It permits students the choice of doing a practical project or conducting a piece of research. It also assists students to develop a range of transferable skills (including communication, problem solving, self-learning, self-management, working with others, computing and statistics) as an integral part of the study of economics that are relevant to a wide range of careers and further
studies. Upon completion of this course, students should be able to:
identify research topics and design a research project independently; understand the techniques of collecting, organizing and analysing data and information; acquire the ability to apply economic principles and quantitative techniques to a range of practical economic issues; and communicate the research findings in a report concisely and effectively.

**Fin. 205 Foundations of Finance**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with the knowledge of investment products, financial analysis, and portfolio theory. Moreover, practical applications for real-world financing and asset allocation decisions will be covered. Main topics include portfolio theory, asset pricing theory, analysis of equity and fixed-income investments, financial derivatives and ethical standards in investment industry.

**Fin. 243 Money and Banking**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to use a few basic economic models to develop students’ understanding of the nature of a money economy, the structure of a banking system, principles and practice of bank management, and the role of monetary policy in the economy.

**Fin. 245 Introduction to Corporate Finance**

1 Term; 3 Credits

Integrating Accounting and Finance, the theory and practice of
corporate finance in this course enable students to address the concepts and techniques of valuation of cash flows, capital budgeting decisions, risk and return, cost of capital, capital structure theories and decisions, dividend theories and policy, working capital management, and financial planning.

**Fin. 330 International Finance**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

The course provides students key fundamental concepts in international finance, macroeconomics and trade. Students will be introduced to the current frontier of research in selected areas of international finance, preparing them to conduct original research in this important subject area. This course outlines the basic principles essential for participation in international financial markets and financing international operations, including balance-of-payments adjustment theories, determination of exchange rates, international parity conditions, use of financial derivatives such as spot, forward, futures, options and swaps to manage foreign exchange risks and exposures.

**Fin. 343 Microfinance**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

The course aims at allowing students to get familiarized with theories and concepts in Microfinance. The focus of the course is to create a link between the theory and practice of demand and supply for financial services targeting the low income groups. The course also aims to develop leadership skills, problem-solving techniques, and an ability to work cooperatively and independently through a
work placement scheme.

**Fin. 347 Introduction to Financial Derivatives**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course introduces students to the main types and characteristics of financial derivatives (futures, forwards, options, and swaps), and the markets in which they are traded. These instruments have become extremely popular investment tools to speculate for or hedge against unwanted risk associated with changes in interest rates, exchange rates, equity prices, commodity prices, inflation, weather, etc. Students will learn how to calculate the fair value of various financial derivatives, understand the pros and cons of various models that are widely used, and apply these instruments and models for valuation, risk management and financial engineering.

**Fin. 348 Global Banking**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at studying the trends and developments impacting the practices of today's global banking industry and global capital markets. Students will be exposed to the forces that have shaped the industry for the past two decades and the impact they have had on the current practices and composition of the industry. Heavily emphasized in the course are such areas as global fund-raising, asset distribution and securities/derivatives activities in the major capital markets of the world. The course looks at both the evolution of these practices as well as the strategies it takes for banks to
be winners in these continuing competitive and consolidating markets. Major topics covered are as follows: global financial sector restructuring; syndicated lending and project financing; bank compliance: money laundering; global private, corporate, commercial and investment banking; risk dimensions in global banking; regulation in global banking; and global banking competition.

**Fin. 349 Wealth Management and Planning**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with a comprehensive understanding of the process of wealth planning and management, and equip them with the knowledge and skills that a wealth manager should possess in identifying and assessing clients’ needs and goals. Moreover, it helps students to acquire global asset allocation and portfolio management techniques. Students will also be trained to make all aspects of wealth management decisions from an integrated perspective.

**Fin. 410 Financial Data Analysis**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with quantitative techniques for extracting information from international financial and accounting data. Also, the course will equip students with research methodology to handle data analysis and conduct empirical studies in global financial markets.

**Fin. 423 Financial Risk Analysis and Management**

1 Term; 3 Credits
This course provides an overview of the main theoretical concepts underlying the analysis and management of financial (interest rate, exchange rate, equity price, commodity price, liquidity and credit) risks, and to show how these concepts can be implemented in practice in a variety of contexts. In addition to the quantitative approaches, this course also focuses on the qualitative approaches under the Basel II and the transition to the Basel III in capital requirements, risk governance, risk culture, etc., in the light of the current financial crisis which has demonstrated that financial models have limitations.

**Fin. 424 Financial Services in China**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at fostering an understanding of the recent development of financial services in China, including banking, securities, insurance and fund management. It also aims to enhance students’ abilities to analyse the challenges and prospects of financial services in China.

**Fin. 433 Seminar on Global Financial Environment**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to familiarize students with the process of global financial integration. Students will thus be introduced to different ways of interpreting and understanding the global financial environment. Moreover, students will be encouraged to consolidate critical and evaluative skills including conceptualization and analysis. They can also be equipped with the ability to apply theories to current developments in international finance.
**Fin. 443 Financial Economics**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to offer an in-depth treatment of how individuals and society allocate resources through a price system based on the valuation of risky assets in an uncertain environment. Upon completion of this course, students should be able to use financial models to value financial assets, evaluate investment decisions in risky situations, formulate hedging and risk management strategies using derivatives and apply corporate theory to managerial decisions.

**Fin. 444 Financial Institutions in Hong Kong**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to develop students’ understanding of the theoretical concepts about financial institutions and the recent developments of financial institutions in Hong Kong. It also aims to enhance students’ abilities to analyse the challenges and prospects faced by financial institutions in Hong Kong.

**Fin. 445 Regulation and Management of Financial Institutions in Hong Kong**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to highlight the importance of regulations in maintaining financial stability and bank failures’ prevention. It identifies and assesses the trade-offs between regulation/supervision and domestic/international competitiveness, between safety nets and other major policies that have been ushered in by the recent global...
financial crises. It also sheds light on Hong Kong’s regulatory tradition and policy implications on Hong Kong financial sector.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(SERVICE COURSES)

Econ. 100 Introduction to Economics
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide a general study of basic economic principles. It introduces Economics not only as a body of knowledge but also a method for understanding current economic problems.

Major topics covered are: the nature, principles and methodology of Economics; demand and supply in the product and resource markets; national income accounting; simple national income determination models; aggregate demand and supply analysis; money supply and central banking; international trade and finance; and the effects of monetary and fiscal policies on the local economy.

Econ. 101-2 Principles of Economics
2 Terms; 6 Credits

This course aims to provide a general study of basic economic principles. It presents economics not only as a mere body of knowledge but also as a method for understanding the current economic problems.

Major topics covered are as follows: the nature and methodology of Economics; demand and supply; pricing and allocating factors of production; market failure and public choice; externalities and the environment; national income determination models; fiscal policy; money and banking in Hong Kong; monetary policy; inflation and business cycles; macroeconomic policy challenges; trading with the world; and balance of payments and exchange rates.
Econ. 320 International Trade

1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of the course is to introduce to students the theories of international trade, as well as to demonstrate the principles of applying basic models to trade policy analysis. Major topics covered are as follows: Ricardian comparative advantage, the Heckscher-Ohlin model, intra-industry trade, foreign direct investment (FDI), protectionism, economic integration, WTO, and globalization.

Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of Economics and Finance, please refer to their respective Departments for details.
Department of English Language and Literature

The main objectives of this Department are:

1. To strengthen productive skills in written and spoken English;
2. To provide broad educational exposure which encourages bilingual competence and multicultural sensitivity and development;
3. To stimulate intellectual growth through providing an educationally generalist programme;
4. To encourage student exploration of cultural heritages through critical analyses of English language and literatures in English;
5. To initiate students to adopt an interdisciplinary approach to knowledge in a web-like and complex 21st century.

The course schedule for the four-year Bachelor of Arts (Hons.) in English programme is listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Credits</th>
<th>1st Term</th>
<th>2nd Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First Year (Total number of credits required: 37-38)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Language Requirement</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 101-2</td>
<td>First Year Chinese</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Departmental Core Requirements

Eng. 101-2  English Skills ................................................................. 4 4
Eng. 120  Introduction to Literature ................................................. 3 -
Eng. 140  Introduction to Translation .............................................. - 3
Eng. 153  Introduction to Cultural Studies .................................... 3 -
Eng. 160  Introduction to Linguistics .............................................. - 3
Eng. 181-2  Oral English ................................................................. 1 1

Departmental Electives (choose 3 credits)

Eng. 183  Modern Asian Fiction ................................................... 3 -
Eng. 184  Women's Writing and Feminist Readings ...................... 3 -
Eng. 185  Greek and Roman Mythology in Western Literature .... 3 -

Free Electives (choose 4-5 credits)

Chi. 131-2  Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates) .......... 1 1
Comp. 101  Introduction to Information Technology ................. 3 -
Fren. 191  French I ..................................................................... 3 -
Fren. 192  French II ..................................................................... 3 -
Hist. 120  Introduction to World History to 1500 A.D. ............ 3 -
P.E. 103  Physical Education ...................................................... 2 -
P.E. 104  Physical Education ...................................................... - 2
Phil. 103  Introduction to Philosophy .......................................... 3 -
Phil. 113  Logic ......................................................................... 3 -
Psy. 100  Introductory Psychology ............................................. 3 -
Soc. 107  Understanding Sociology ........................................... - 3
Soc. 150  Critical Thinking ......................................................... 3 (3)

Total number of credits for First Year courses

Language Requirement: 8
Departmental Core Requirements: 22
Departmental Electives: 3
Free Electives: 4-5
### Second Year (Total number of credits required: 30-31)

#### Departmental Core Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 233</td>
<td>The Language of Poetry</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 234</td>
<td>City Culture and Hong Kong Urbanscape</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 240</td>
<td>Literary Translation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 250</td>
<td>Sociolinguistics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 260</td>
<td>Academic Writing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Departmental Electives (choose 6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 183</td>
<td>Modern Asian Fiction</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 184</td>
<td>Women's Writing and Feminist Readings</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 185</td>
<td>Greek and Roman Mythology in Western Literature</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 210</td>
<td>Textual Analysis of 20th Century Fiction</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 270</td>
<td>Discourse Analysis</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 282</td>
<td>Persuasive Writing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 283</td>
<td>Literature and Film</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 284</td>
<td>Modern Drama</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Free Electives (choose 9-10 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 130</td>
<td>Principles of Marketing</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fren. 291</td>
<td>French III</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fren. 292</td>
<td>French IV</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 230</td>
<td>Technological Change and Human Communication</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 103</td>
<td>Introduction to Anthropology</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AND: All Free Electives listed under First Year**

#### Total number of credits for Second Year courses

- Departmental Core Requirements: 15
- Departmental Electives: 6
- Free Electives: 9-10

Total: 37-38
## Third Year (Total number of credits required: 30-31)

### Departmental Core Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 305</td>
<td>Technoscience Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 320</td>
<td>Critical Analysis of Drama</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 340</td>
<td>Interpreting I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 350</td>
<td>Psycholinguistics</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Departmental Electives (choose 9 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 270</td>
<td>Discourse Analysis</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 283</td>
<td>Literature and Film</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 330</td>
<td>Gender, Language and Translation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 335</td>
<td>Popular Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 364</td>
<td>Second Language Acquisition</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 381</td>
<td>The Sound System of English</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 384</td>
<td>Themed Fiction</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 385</td>
<td>Shakespeare</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 386</td>
<td>Renaissance Literature and the English Society, 1516-1667</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 387</td>
<td>Media Translation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 388</td>
<td>American Literature</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 389</td>
<td>Travel and Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 479</td>
<td>Science Fiction in Literature and Films</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 489</td>
<td>Visual Culture Studies</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Free Electives (choose 9-10 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 251-2</td>
<td>Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comp. 204</td>
<td>Web Page Development</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fren. 291</td>
<td>French III</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fren. 292</td>
<td>French IV</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fren. 391</td>
<td>French V</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 240</td>
<td>History of Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Jour. 220  Mass Communication Theories................................. 3 -
PRA. 320  Public Relations Disciplines........................................ - 3
PRA. 330  Advertising Strategies and Design ............................. - 3
Soc. 204  Cultures in the Contemporary World ......................... 3 -
Soc. 255  Philosophy through Film and Literature................... 3 -
Soc. 371  Chinese Culture and Society..................................... - 3

**Total number of credits for Third Year courses**

Departmental Core Requirements: 12
Departmental Electives: 9
Free Electives: 9-10
Total: 30-31

**Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 27)**

**Departmental Core Requirements**

Eng. 406  Literature, Culture and Ecological Ethics............... 3 -
Eng. 409  Interdisciplinary Approach to English Studies.......... - 3
Eng. 440  Translation and Globalization............................... 3 -
Eng. 450  Phonological Studies in World Englishes ............... - 3

**Departmental Electives (choose 9 credits)**

Eng. 366  Interpreting II .................................................... -
Eng. 410  Linguistic Approaches to Translation.................... - 3
Eng. 460  Contemporary Literature or.................................. - 3
Eng. 470  Comparative Literature ....................................... - 3
Eng. 479  Science Fiction in Literature and Films.................. 3 -
Eng. 484  Romantics and Romantic Sceptics......................... 3 -
Eng. 485  Victorian Literature and Society......................... 3 -
Eng. 486  Issues in Pragmatics ......................................... - 3
Eng. 487  Contemporary Translation Theory and its Applications - 3
Eng. 489  Visual Culture Studies ........................................ - 3
Eng. 490  Honours Project......................................................... 3

**Free Electives** (choose 6 credits)

Soc. 331  Western Classical Social Thought................................. 3

Soc. 336  Love, Family and Kinship ........................................... 3

**AND**: All Free Electives listed under Third Year

**Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses**

Departmental Core Requirements: 12

Departmental Electives: 9

Free Electives: 6

Total: 27
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(BA DEGREE PROGRAMME)

Eng. 101 English Skills I

1 Term; 4 Credits

This course aims to enhance students’ proficiency in all aspects of English usage. Students will have ample opportunity to critically read and analyse a variety of English texts, and hone their oral skills through class discussions and presentations. Particular emphasis, however, will be placed on the writing process, from summarizing and paraphrasing to the production of short compositions and academic essays. As this course is designed for English majors, the assignments will include some texts about literature, language, or culture.

Eng. 102 English Skills II

1 Term; 4 Credits

Building on Eng. 101, this course presents students with an opportunity to engage some challenging readings in English through class discussion, oral presentations and writing tasks, including a substantial term essay. Special emphasis is on various techniques of textual analysis and response, both verbal and written. The workshop approach adopted in the course includes regular in-class exercises, analyses of relevant examples, and peer editing. As this course is designed for English majors, assignments will also incorporate some texts about literature, language, or culture.
Eng. 120 Introduction to Literature  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to introduce students to various genres of literature (short story, poetry, drama, fiction) as well as to critical reading methods. It also aims to enhance students’ appreciation and understanding of major types of literature and equip them with the ability to develop critical approaches to thinking, reading and writing about literary works.

Eng. 140 Introduction to Translation  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course lays the foundation for the translation programme and for all elective courses in the translation field offered by the English Department. It aims at equipping students with the necessary skills and techniques which they need to produce quality translations. Emphasis is placed on studying the similarities and differences between Chinese and English on lexical, syntactical and textual levels and their influences on translation. In this course, some mainstream translation theories that are of immediate importance to E/C and C/E translations will also be covered by relating to authentic examples taken from real-world settings. After studying this course, students are expected to understand and grasp the basic translation principles and master the correct procedures for analysing the source text and produce proper target text.

Eng. 153 Introduction to Cultural Studies  
1 Term; 3 Credits

Through examining texts, artistic forms and discursive practices that reflect and produce different cultures, students will take
part in delineating the working definition(s), methodology and critical awareness of the subject. Concepts such as multiculturalism, diaspora, hybridity, globalism/localism, transnationalism will be discussed. Emphasis will be given to Hong Kong culture as a basic reference point in its contact and interaction with other cultures.

**Eng. 160 Introduction to Linguistics**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces the fundamental concepts of linguistics and the major areas of linguistics, including Phonetics, Phonology, Morphology, Syntax, Semantics and Pragmatics. It is also the aim of this course to introduce students to the techniques of linguistic analysis and to equip them with knowledge and skills for future linguistic research and studies.

**Eng. 181-2 Oral English**

2 Terms; 2 Credits

Oral English is a course designed for first year university students for whom English is not a first language. The course focuses on building conversation, pronunciation, and oral comprehension skills through class discussions and various communicative activities. The course encourages students to ask questions and express their opinions. The course will explore current events, professional situations, and foreign cultures.

**Eng. 183 Modern Asian Fiction**

1 Term; 3 Credits

Through critical reading of various modern Asian novels and short stories, this course explores modern Asian culture and history.
as reflected in literary texts. Issues such as modernity and post-modernity, colonialism and postcolonialism, identity, gender and sexuality will be discussed. This course also questions the idea of national literature, and how a category of literature is formed. Basic critical theories will also be introduced.

**Eng. 184 Women's Writing and Feminist Readings**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to introduce students to the various ways of engaging literary texts from feminist perspectives. Taking literary texts (mostly fiction by established author such as Virginia Woolf, Doris Lessing, Adrian Rich, Toni Morrison, etc) as a major site of political contestation, women have developed a tradition of readings and writings that contributes to multiple interpretations of modern culture. Topics of the course will include introduction to various feminist literary theories, representation of women in various cultural texts, and the traditions of women's writings as evolved across cultures.

**Eng. 185 Greek and Roman Mythology in Western Literature**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The myths and legends of ancient Greece and Rome permeate Western literature, culture and language. This course aims to introduce students to the primary classical myths and their meaning, and examine the various ways they underlie and shape Western (especially English) literary texts. Students will also be exposed to the treatment of Greco-Roman myths in various genres and cultural media, from poetry and prose, science fiction to visual art.
Eng. 210 Textual Analysis of 20th Century Fiction

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course develops the growing sensitivity to literature of participants together with their analytical and critical abilities. This will be achieved through the reading of, discussion on, and writing about a limited number of accessible short stories and novels written after 1900.

Eng. 233 The Language of Poetry

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces participants to the language and methods of practical poetry criticism and the art of publicly reading a poem. It pays particular attention to poetry’s use of figurative language while the formal aspects of poetry, for example metre and the classification of poetry into different forms, are covered only in outline.

Eng. 234 City Culture and Hong Kong Urbanscape

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course adopts a cultural studies approach to the exploration of how modern and postmodern cities can be “read” as cultural texts, and also how Hong Kong as a socio-cultural milieu can be mapped by academic discourse. The categories of class, gender and race in relation to the city will be the central issues for discussion, and specific venues such as airport, MTR, shopping malls, theme parks and heritage sites will be important cases in point. Students will be introduced to a wide range of theoretical debates related to city studies, and they will be the conceptual ground for in-depth analysis of texts both in print culture (i.e. fiction, poetry, drama
and other writings) and media culture (i.e. films, TV programmes and on-line materials). The ultimate aim of this course is to provide students with insights into how cultural identity is constructed through the consumption of cityscape as their everyday life experience. Concepts relating to the postcolonial city, the cosmopolitan, the cinematic city, the fantastic city for tourism, the technocity and the green metropolis of the future will be explored in terms of sociocultural dynamics and changes.

**Eng. 240 Literary Translation**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course studies the rhetorical features that characterize literary writing and their representations in translation. Four major types of literary writing (i.e., poetry, novels, plays, and essays) will be discussed in class with exemplification of literary texts and translated texts. Both theoretical ideas and practical translation techniques will be introduced to students of this course.

**Eng. 250 Sociolinguistics**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces the major issues in Sociolinguistics and examines the relation between human, language and society. Issues to be introduced and discussed in the course include: language variations – regional, social and situational; language change – historical and social perspectives; language, culture and thought; language and gender; social functions of language and language in contact.
Eng. 260 Academic Writing

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to help students develop their confidence and ability to communicate in written English for academic purposes. Students will be given the opportunity to read, reflect upon and practise producing different genres of text in order to better understand what academic writing is and how to write effective academic texts in English.

Eng. 270 Discourse Analysis

1 Term; 3 Credits

Discourse analysis is concerned with the examination of language in use. It encompasses a diversity of approaches with which to describe and explain the structure and function of texts, and how they communicate meaning in different social and situational contexts. This course aims to introduce students to some of the fundamental concepts and methods for describing and analysing written, spoken and visual discourse. Authentic examples of texts will be drawn from a variety of genres for illustration (e.g. conversations, speeches, academic writing, newspaper articles, Internet communication, advertisements). Students will be encouraged to collect and analyse their own data for their assignments.

Eng. 282 Persuasive Writing

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course offers students the opportunity to enhance critical reading and writing skills necessary to the practice of persuasive academic writing. Areas covered include analysis of controversial issues and texts, identifying logical fallacies, citing and documenting
credible secondary sources, developing an awareness of opposing positions, and crafting effective refutations. Significant class time will be allotted to writing in a workshop environment with peer review of drafts by the instructor and other students.

Eng. 283 Literature and Film

1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of this course is to familiarize students with the kindred relationships between literature and film. It will concentrate on the essential differences as well as similarities among genres such as novel, film, drama/theatre, and poetry, etc. Theories on the print culture and media culture respectively will be brought forth, in order for students to have a firm grasp of their different modes of operation, aesthetics and representation, and also how the two merge under specific circumstances. Issues in adaptation where literary versions can be juxtaposed with their filmic counterparts will be discussed.

Eng. 284 Modern Drama

1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of this course is to familiarise students with modern drama and its characteristics. The course will examine a few representative plays from the modern period and survey the major aesthetic and cultural movements of the twentieth century.
Eng. 305 Technoscience Culture

1 Term; 3 Credits

With the fast developments in technoscience in the modern world, it is important to introduce to students the ways technosciences and mass media bear on our sense of identity and subjectivity. The aim of this course is to initiate students to the relevance of literature as cultural text to such a phenomenon, and to help them discover the way literary arts and visual imaginary respond to the different ramifications of contemporary technosciences which has unprecedentedly transformed their everyday life experiences. Through a body of fiction, films, T.V. shows, computer mediated communication devices, cybercultural forms, etc which deal directly with new communication technologies, this class will highlight the radical effects on the post-modernist self and on virtuality of all kinds.

Eng. 320 Critical Analysis of Drama

1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of this course is to introduce students to dramatic genre and styles in the Western literary tradition. The course will look into the development of drama in the West, modern interpretation of drama and stage performance.

Eng. 330 Gender, Language and Translation

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces students to a theoretical paradigm which establishes interrelations among gender, language and translation. The course first traces the different stages of research be-
tween gender and translation in terms of translation practice, translation history and criticism, and new concepts in translation theory. It then addresses the various issues within feminist thinking, and the ways they could be incorporated into translation studies. By studying this course, students will acquire in-depth knowledge about the emergent common-ground among these three areas of studies. The ultimate outcome is for students to construct an interdisciplinary structure for the purpose of analysing language and translation issues from a gender perspective.

Eng. 335 Popular Culture

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at providing students with an introduction to contemporary debates on how subjectivities and everyday practices of popular culture take shape in mass society. It also delineates the ways popular culture constitutes a common and thereby important part of our lives. By drawing upon consumer's culture, pop music, media and sports, advertisements, films, anime and comics, theme parks etc, this course endeavours to show to students that an informal consciousness of class, gender and race is essential to any understanding of the sociology of popular cultural practices, both in the West and in Hong Kong. Issues such as postmodernism, identity politics, technoscience and media will be brought forth to bear on popular cultural texts which are already parts of students' literacies and practices.

Eng. 340 Interpreting I

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to enlighten students on the acquisition of E
to C and C to E interpreting skills through intensive practical drills in the language laboratory, with emphasis mainly on listening comprehension (phonetic identification), transcription, note-taking, short-term memory (linked thinking), sight translation and vocabulary/glossary builder (pertaining to a variety of subject matters, e.g. law and finance); with interpretation problems identified and explained. The acquisition of skills is also complemented by the learning of basic principles of interpretation as put forward by scholars and veteran interpreters. Upon completion of the course, students are expected to have grasped the interpretation rules and principles, and attained the skills and knowledge for accomplishing an interpreting job.

**Eng. 350 Psycholinguistics**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to introduce students to the major psycholinguistic topics in the comprehension and production of language and the relationship between language and the brain. The history and scope of psycholinguistics as well as the mental processes involved in the perception, comprehension and production of language and speech will be introduced and discussed in the course. In addition, the nature of first and second language acquisition will be discussed.

**Eng. 364 Second Language Acquisition**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to introduce to students the theories and findings concerning the acquisition of English as a Second Language (ESL). It starts with first language acquisition research, because this
is necessary to understand second language acquisition. The early sessions cover the revolution that occurred in second language acquisition some twenty to thirty years ago (early developments of SLA). These are followed by a switch to examining individual learner differences purported to affect second language acquisition, such as language aptitude, motivation, learning strategies, learner beliefs etc. Then the course explores contemporary accounts of acquisitional processes, but linked to the classroom (classroom-based SLA), so that the focus is on how second language acquisition research findings are relevant to pedagogic decision making.

**Eng. 366 Interpreting II**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is to allow students who have completed the course *Interpreting I* to hone their acquired interpreting skills on subject matters pertaining to specific fields, like law, business and finance, medical and health, and etc. and to further their language knowledge thereof for professional interpretation purposes. Interpretation problems involving Chinese and English languages in terms of cross-cultural perspectives are to be highlighted and explained. The learning materials mainly include radio or TV broadcasting of court cases and other programs pertaining to the aforesaid specific fields. Upon completion of the course, students are expected to have acquired the skills, knowledge and ability essential to mode a professional interpreter, and get prepared for taking public professional examination, e.g. CMIL and CATTI.
Eng. 381 The Sound System of English

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is an in-depth study of the sound system of English. It aims at examining the phonetic and phonological aspects of the English language and consolidating students’ phonetic and phonological knowledge acquired in their first year of linguistics study. It also serves to bridge the gap between Eng. 160 Introduction to Linguistics and Eng. 450 Phonological Studies in World Englishes.

Eng. 384 Themed Fiction

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course utilizes the literary sensitivity, analytical ability, and critical insight developed during earlier compulsory and elective literature courses to explore, in-depth, a small number of texts that are connected by a common theme. The common theme is an integral part of the course and will both complement other aspects of the English Department’s degree programme and stand by itself as a significant and engaging topic. This year the theme will be the representation of Asia by three left-leaning, male, Western writers: George Orwell, Graham Greene, and Yann Martel.

Eng. 385 Shakespeare

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course is an introduction to the works of William Shakespeare. Through an examination of some representative plays and selected sonnets, students will acquire an appreciation of Shakespeare’s use of language as well as his dramatic treatment of larger themes, such as love, sexuality, politics and identity. Close reading of the texts will be complemented by a discussion of modern critical
interpretations and various adaptations of Shakespeare in the past and the contemporary cultural landscape.

Eng. 386 Renaissance Literature and the English Society, 1516-1667
1 Term; 3 Credits
The aim of this course is to introduce students to Renaissance literature and its characteristics. The course will look at a variety of literary texts from the Renaissance as cultural representations and examine the formal features of the texts as well as the cultural, social, historical and political contexts in which they appeared.

Eng. 387 Media Translation
1 Term; 3 Credits
The course aims to equip students with the principles and techniques of translating print and non-print media texts, including press releases, magazine articles, features, film scripts, advertisements and corporate promotional materials. The practical and research skills that are of immediate importance to the translation of media texts will also be introduced with translation examples taken from real-world settings. Upon completion of this course, students should be able to formulate and employ appropriate translation strategies to overcome language and cultural barriers of media texts and translate with confidence non-technical media texts from English to Chinese and vice versa.
Eng. 388 American Literature

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course seeks to introduce students to the major literary epochs of American literature and to broaden their knowledge of the significant European cultural heritages affecting the evolution of that literature and to encourage student exploration of the sociopolitical, philosophical and scientific influences underpinning American literary development.

Eng. 389 Travel and Culture

1 Term; 3 Credits

Travel has recently become a complex phenomenon of unprecedented proportions. This course aims at providing a theoretical and historical framework to analyse and reflect upon the relationships between travel and culture through an interdisciplinary approach. Topics discussed include: globalization, gender, consumption, theme parks, ecology, heritage and authenticity, etc. Travel writing will also be emphasized.

Eng. 406 Literature, Culture and Ecological Ethics

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course introduces students to the relatedness between literature and environmental or ecological ethics within the context of intercultural studies. Students are expected to first have a grasp of modern ecology (how it is different from biology and its importance in the 21st century), and move onto focusing on how it can be discussed in the field of intercultural studies. Texts on cultural geography, environment and social theory, ecotheology, mythology, ecofeminism and ecotourism will be used, and they are to be placed
alongside some Western literary works (novels and short stories) and motion pictures (including animation) for illustration. Classical Chinese texts and English translation such as Daoism and Buddhism as well as literature such as Tang poetry will be brought forth for discussion.

**Eng. 409 Interdisciplinary Approach to English Studies**

1 Term; 3 Credits

Knowledge-claims in 21st century have gone beyond the modernist mind-set of departmentalization. In an emerging network culture and unprecedented complexity of learnings, students need to adopt a more mobile and permeable “interdisciplinary” approach to what they learn from college. This seminar is designed for students in English to achieve a sense of integration among the various components in their curriculum. Besides reading materials which deal directly with ideas such as counter-disciplinary praxis, the intersection of natural science, social sciences and humanities, the philosophy of difference which stresses a relational ontology, etc, students will be initiated into the actual working of what is now called “Intercultural Studies” as an umbrella concept of such an approach.

**Eng. 410 Linguistic Approaches to Translation**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is intended to (1) provide a comprehensive survey of major linguistic theories (e.g. semantics, pragmatics, corpus linguistics) which have an immediate connection with the field of translation studies; (2) examine how these linguistic theories are used to shed light on translation practice; and (3) analyse translation issues from the perspective of linguistic theories with reference to authentic
examples. Upon completing this course, students are expected to develop a better understanding of the interconnected relation of linguistics and translation and formulate effective translation strategies using relevant linguistic theories.

**Eng. 440 Translation and Globalization**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at developing students’ understanding of translation and translation studies within the framework of globalization. Major translation theories that are related to globalization will be introduced in a systematic and well-organized manner to facilitate students’ grasp of current translation development. Major topics include translation paradigm shifts as influenced by globalization, the impact of globalization on translation, translation and hegemony, etc. The role of modern technology and its influence on the translation industry will also be introduced. Upon completion of this course, students are expected to gain critical insights into and develop basic research competence in translation studies.

**Eng. 450 Phonological Studies in World Englishes**

1 Term; 3 Credits

“World Englishes” refers to the different varieties of English in the world. The course focuses on the study of the sound patterns of the English language and the application of phonological rules in the analysis and explanation of the different varieties of English spoken around the world. It is also the aim of the course to examine the use of English in bilingual and multilingual societies.
Eng. 460 Contemporary Literature
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to initiate students to the vast field of contemporary literature after the 1950's. Important works originally written in English (with a few translated into English from European Languages) are introduced and arranged roughly in chronological order and also in terms of literary critical concepts such as intertextuality (i.e. parody), from late modernism to the post-modernism proper, ethnic studies and (post) colonialism, magic realism, feminisms (including postfeminisms and cyberfeminism), the so-called cyberculture and posthumanism, and finally ecological ethics in the 21st century. It is assumed that literary works are cultural texts in general, hence they are best approached using cultural theories. Students are exposed to concepts and issues within the field such as discourse, representation, globalism (or glocalism), psychoanalysis, poststructuralism, deconstruction, hybridity, cultural identity (which includes class, gender, race and the machine), and finally technoscience culture as well as deep ecology. Besides literary texts, students will do some readings on theories and criticisms, since it would be necessary for them to be equipped with specific understanding of key words and critical terms. Some of the texts are in film media, and students are encouraged to view them critically outside class time.

Eng. 470 Comparative Literature
1 Term; 3 Credits

As an introduction to the discipline, the aim of the study of comparative literature is to acquaint students with some of the general areas/approaches/problems revealed by theoretical and practical
scholarship in the branches of comparative study. Influence studies, genre, cross-cultural and linguistic barriers are components of this course. Chinese and English works are the textual basis of student concentration.

**Eng. 479 Science Fiction in Literature and Films**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to introduce to students both the historical development and narrative structure of science fiction as a unique genre within the context of the postmodernist movement. Through a body of literary works such as cultural theories, short stories, and novellas, and Sci-fi films, students will be introduced to topics such as alternate history, artificial intelligence, cyberpunk, cloning and genetic engineering, cyborg and posthumanism, nanotechnology, etc.

**Eng. 484 Romantics and Romantic Sceptics**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course balances arch-romantics such as Blake, Wordsworth, and Byron, against writers like Jane Austen and Thomas Love Peacock who are sceptical of romantic values and show a preference for more rational or realistic perspectives. It offers a sampling of English literature from the Romantic Period, focusing on works by major canonized authors, while acknowledging the growing importance of an alternative canon.

**Eng. 485 Victorian Literature and Society**

1 Term; 3 Credits
This course introduces participants to a range of Victorian literature during the period c. 1837-1900. Students will explore the major social, cultural, and intellectual issues of the Victorian age and consider how literary writers engaged with the concerns of their time. The course is arranged around a broad set of topics including the Victorian city, the “woman question,” poetic voices, and imperialism and national identity. Using relevant critical theories as well as selected non-literary writings of the time, such as social commentaries, journalism, or philosophical essays, students will learn to recognize and analyse the intersections between literature and society.

Eng. 486 Issues in Pragmatics

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to give students a comprehensive understanding of the multi-disciplinary character of pragmatics, with a particular focus on those key issues concerning the pragmatic development among second language learners. As such, the course begins with brief reviews of basic concepts and theories of pragmatics. Following these, the course proceeds to discuss those various issues surrounding the pragmatic development in a second language. Issues covered in these sessions include such topics as research methods of pragmatics, patterns of pragmatic development, pragmatics and grammar, and other issues relevant to the teaching, learning and assessment of pragmatics etc. The course materials will be featuring the two languages used daily in the HK context (i.e. English, and Mandarin or Cantonese).
Eng. 487 Contemporary Translation Theory & its Applications
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is intended to provide a comprehensive survey of major translation theories, such as the linguistic, cultural, functional and philosophical translation theories. The focus is predominantly on contemporary works in or related to translation studies, with some historical literature providing a necessary context. Major issues of translation theories are identified and discussed with reference to authentic translation texts and/or actual translation practice. Upon completing this course, students are expected to be cognizant of the interdisciplinary nature of translation studies and develop some viable theoretical approaches to analysing translation and its role in cross-cultural communication.

Eng. 489 Visual Culture Studies
1 Term; 3 Credits

With the advance in visual and media technologies, our society has been increasingly predominated by visual signs and spectacle since the beginning of 20th century. This course aims at equipping students with the tools for more critical understanding of everyday visual experience. It will draw upon cultural texts, such as photography, cinema and television, digital media, Internet and web images, video and computer games, anime and manga, advertisements, fashion and architecture, and as well as visual culture theories to discuss issues like nationality, gender, class, race, postmodernism, consumerism, post-colonialism, etc.
Eng. 490 Honours Project

1 Term; 3 Credits

The Senior Honours Project is an opportunity for undergraduate students to pursue independent research and scholarship under faculty guidance. The Senior Honours Project offers seniors the opportunity to work one-on-one with a faculty mentor on a research and creative endeavour of mutual interest. This arrangement fosters intellectual growth and provides a capstone experience for students.

Fren. 191 French I

1 Term; 3 Credits

This basic course aims to develop the ability to communicate in basic French in a culturally appropriate manner using the four primary language skills: speaking, listening, reading and writing. Students should gain:

1) a familiarity with the French language: its sounds, rhythms, intonation, vocabulary, structure, written form;
2) beginning experiences in listening, speaking, reading, and writing in French;
3) basic communication skills and the ability to express simple needs; and
4) an introductory acquaintance with the cultures of the French-speaking countries.

Fren. 192 French II

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is a continuation of the basics of the French communication skills covered in French I.
Fren. 291 French III

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is a continuation of the basics of the French communication skills covered in French I and II. Students will continue to develop fluency in the language and will be introduced to more complex grammar and more complex constructions with an emphasis on verbal knowledge of the language.

Fren. 292 French IV

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is a continuation of the basics of the French communication skills covered in French III. The unit focuses on mastery of the language required to function in a range of contexts using correct and appropriate language.

Fren. 391 French V

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is a continuation of the French communication skills covered in French IV. Training in the four skills of the language will continue with emphasis on expression proficiency. They will also learn how to organize efficiently their speech. The course also aims to prepare students to sit for the first levels of the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(SERVICE COURSES)

Eng. 111-2 English Usage

2 Terms; 6 Credits

This course is designed to improve students’ language skills and upgrade their overall language proficiency in the four basic language areas, i.e. reading, listening, speaking and writing. It covers a wide range of language activities/tasks in an integrated format, including: (1) reading and listening comprehension lessons based on authentic material covering stories of human interest, argumentative and expository essays, interviews or forums on current and socially relevant issues; (2) varied expression in vocabulary improvement, with emphasis on idiomatic expressions, phrasal verbs and other nuances; (3) grammar revision and extension covering sentence analysis, close structural transformation, subordination, modification and correction of errors; (4) oral-aural practice through enjoyable and stimulating exercises to be done individually, in pairs or in groups.

Eng. 211-2 English Writing

2 Terms; 6 Credits

This course focuses on academic writing in English and provides some experience in practical writing, academic writing, and writing resumes and employment application letters. Through participation in classroom activities and the completion of writing tasks and assignments, students are provided with an opportunity to enhance their skills in listening, discussing, note-taking, summarising,
researching, analysing questions and assignments, reading for specific information, synthesising a precise and relevant response for a given purpose, presenting thoughts and ideas in a logical sequence, providing citations and preparing bibliographies, and recognising/correcting grammar and syntax errors.

**Eng. 383 Persuasive Writing**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to reinforce essay writing and speaking skills learned in earlier English courses, and to introduce new writing skills needed to make convincing proposals and position papers in academic disciplines, in the marketplace and in exit tests like the IELTS used in Hong Kong requiring demonstration of written argumentative skills.

*Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of English Language and Literature, please refer to their respective Departments for details.*
Master of Arts in Interdisciplinary Cultural Studies

Programme Objectives

1. To enhance students’ creativity and their potential to take on new managerial and cultural challenges upon graduation by enabling them to expand their conceptual framework and develop a world-view of interdisciplinarity.
2. To equip graduates to respond positively and creatively to new and substantially different points of view.
3. To prepare students for the pursuit of further studies. The M.A. Programme provides firm grounding for those who wish to advance to M.Phil. or Ph.D. programmes both overseas and locally which emphasize an interdisciplinary approach. It should be noted that there are an increasing number of academic programmes of this kind in fields such as cultural management, education and creative media all over the world.

Programme Curriculum

First Semester (Total number of credits required: 12)

Core Course
Eng. 501 Contemporary Critical Thought........................................ 3

Elective Courses (choose any 3 out of 5 courses)
Eng. 504 Research Methodology for Liberal Studies ...................... 3
Eng. 505 City, Space and Culture .................................................. 3
Eng. 507 Modern China through Films ........................................... 3
Eng. 510 Literature and Visual Culture ........................................... 3
Eng. 511 Language, Culture and Society ....................................... 3
Second Semester (Total number of credits required: 12)

Core Course

Eng. 502    Interdisciplinary Approach to Cultural Studies ................. 3
Eng. 503    Seminar in Cultural Theories and Practice  or .............. 3
Eng. 513    M.A. Dissertation ................................................................ (3)

Elective Courses (choose any 2 out of 5 courses)

Eng. 506    Fabrications of Identity .................................................. 3
Eng. 508    Science, Technology and Culture..................................... 3
Eng. 509    Environment, Ecology and Ecocriticism  ....................... 3
Eng. 512    Hong Kong Cultural Production...................................... 3
Eng. 514    Special Topics in Interdisciplinary Studies...................... 3

The total number of credits required for graduation is 24.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
( MA PROGRAMME)

Eng. 501 Contemporary Critical Thought

1 Term; 3 Credits

Theoretical and interdisciplinary in focus, this course brings together important thoughts by distinguished scholars and philosophers, which centre on contemporary issues concerning the interpretation and analysis of culture within and beyond the purview of English studies. The course responds to a situation in which the humanities are re-evaluated continuously together with perplexing new issues in human sciences, arts, social sciences and technoscience. In the intellectual ferment over the recent decades, new inquiries have been reconfigured pointing to an intercultural and multiperspectival approach to relations such as literature and science, bioethics and gender, modernism and postmodernism, humanism and posthumanism. The general direction of the course is for students to be exposed to significant critical concepts and how they undermine the self-certainty of the time-honoured categories and assumptions within humanistic inquiries such as the integral self, representational theories of language, the nurture/nature distinction. Students are to learn to challenge these established presuppositions as opened up by the chosen readings in the course. The ultimate aim of the course is for students to engage self-critically with contemporary issues, such as identity/subjectivity, socio-cultural values, gender politics, ecoethics, cyberculture, etc, and it is expected that such an engagement will be of help to them both in writing a dissertation.
as a substantial project of research or in the context of the graduation seminar completed in lieu of a dissertation. These issues are to be found in areas of concentration including literary texts and textuality, semiotics, gender and body, the psyche and consciousness, science as discourse and socio-political-cultural theories.

**Eng. 502 Interdisciplinary Approach to Cultural Studies**

1 Term; 3 Credits

Knowledge-claims in the 21st century have gone beyond the modernist mind-set of departmentalization. In an emerging network culture and unprecedented complexity of learning, students need to adopt a more mobile and permeable "interdisciplinary" approach to what they learn at tertiary level. This seminar is designed for students in this programme to achieve a sense of integration among the various components in their curriculum. Besides reading materials which deal directly with ideas such as counter-disciplinary praxis, the intersection of natural science, social sciences and humanities, the philosophy of difference which stresses a relational ontology, etc., students will be initiated into the actual working of what is now called "Interdisciplinary Studies" as an umbrella concept of such an approach.

**Eng. 503 Seminar in Cultural Theories and Practice**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This Graduate Seminar is designed to feature a tripartite structure with equal emphasis on three areas, namely (1) Ecocriticism, (2) Gender Studies & Society, and (3) Language & Literature, to be delivered by a team of teaching staff. Students are assigned to read
a core of original articles written by established scholars in the fields. Each area will take up three weeks and together they form a background of individual presentations starting from the tenth week. Topics for presentation are chosen by students and all teachers and students will engage in rigorous discussion, with specific attention given to the feasibility of the proposals, their methodologies, conceptual framework and appropriateness, and the scope and breadth of the projects. It is hoped that, instead of the teacher-to-students format, all participants in the seminar will join in a structured discussion guided by a proposer-respondent platform.

Eng. 504 Research Methodology for Liberal Studies

1 Term; 3 Credits

Research Methodology for Liberal Studies is a core course intended for students who plan to enrol in Eng. 513 M.A. Dissertation. The aims of the course are to introduce students to the various stages of the research process and provide them with an understanding of the different approaches and methods in research for liberal studies. Through the course, students will learn to read critically, select relevant literature for their research, design, implement and review their research plan and utilise their research findings to help their understanding and problem-solving in the area of liberal studies.

Eng. 505 City, Space and Culture

1 Term; 3 Credits

Since the year 2005, more than half of the world’s population
has been living in cities. Transnational urbanism, therefore, has become an important area of studies which moves across disciplines including architecture, geography, anthropology, media and communication studies and sociology. This course adopts a cultural studies approach by focusing on how the modern and postmodern city can be related to issues of class, gender and race. By drawing on a wide range of key theoretical debates by distinguished scholars, and by reading and appreciating chosen cultural texts both in print culture (i.e. novels, poetry and other writings) and media culture (i.e. films, T.V. on-line materials), this course aims at providing students with insights into how cultural identity is constructed for city dwellers. Students will tackle questions of urban complexities by mapping and re-cognizing a variety of venues such as malls, heritage sites, airports, casinos and theme parks, all forming a cityscape that illuminates the central importance of place and space in urban culture. Concepts relating to, say, the postcolonial city, the cosmopolitan city, the cinematic city, city for tourism, the festival/carnival city, the techno city and green metropolis of the future will be explored in terms of sociocultural dynamics and changes.

After the course, students are expected to have a comprehensive appreciation and understanding of how urban space, time, value, meaning, community all form a complex structure of cultural forces that guide the very processes that fashion our built environment. Such a recognition will help students in dealing with educational modules such as technology and environment, personal growth and globalization as stipulated for liberal studies for secondary school.

Eng. 506 Fabrications of Identity
This course explores the formations of identity from different perspectives, for example, national, cultural, psychoanalysis, post-modern, postcolonial, and gender studies. In recognizing the influence of technology and visual culture in the 21st century, it particularly emphasizes the fabrication of identity in the disciplines of technoscience, consumer culture, fashion design, media culture and ecology. It examines the representation of identity and difference in various local, national, and global settings. Drawing upon theoretical writings of nationalism, psychoanalysis, postcolonialism, post-modernity, gender studies, technoscience culture, media culture and ecology, and cultural texts from different countries, the course aims to examine the fabrication of identity from an interdisciplinary and intercultural approach. Students are encouraged to engage local and global cultural texts in their oral presentation and written works.

Eng. 507 Modern China through Films

This course aims at introducing aspects of the history, politics, society and culture of Modern China to students through films. The films chosen engage the major historical events in modern China, starting from the pre-1949 era, the Three-Anti and Five-Anti Movements, the Cultural Revolution, to the Open Door Policy in 1980s. In addition to considering the historical contexts, we will also critically analyse issues like environmental problems, sexuality, marriage, education, one-child policy, economic boom, modernization, etc. Films produced in Mongolia, the United States and Taiwan are also
included as texts for discussion of issues such as diaspora, minority and nationalism. In some cases, movies are selected for their literary merit, such as *Red Sorghum* by Mo Yan and *To Live* by Yu Hua. Whenever applicable, students are expected to read the written texts together with seeing their film adaptations, and in these cases issues in adaptation such as theories on print and media cultures, modes of operation, aesthetics and representation will also be discussed.

**Eng. 508 Science, Technology and Culture**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course explores the impact of the worldwide technoscience revolution of our era in the cultural context in response to the advent of technology and science in the past two centuries. Special emphasis will be put on the interaction and reciprocation between technology and society. As witness to this important moment, we have a vantage point to review the cultural impact of technology on social, economic, political development since the industrial revolution in the 18th century. Through readings of critical theories by social critics and philosophers, the course will analyse some dominant themes of technoscience culture and society, such as posthumanism and humanity, bioengineering and ethics, feminist science studies, and digital-game based teaching and learning.
Eng. 509 Environment, Ecology and Ecocriticism
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course brings together seminal writings on the central issues in ecology as a scientific discourse and environmental ethics, and how they comprise a base for the general direction and methodology of ecocriticism. Students are expected to have a grasp of geological problems ranging from ozone depletion, deforestation, climate change, water pollution to global crises, animal extinction, environmental pragmatism etc. Ecology as a science is emphasized so as to arm students with a solid foundation of facts, before they move on to topics such as environmentalism, deep ecology, life-ethics, ecofeminism, and the rapidly emerging field of literary ecology. Texts on cultural geography, social and cultural theories on environment, ecological philosophy, mythology and political ecology will be used, and students are encouraged to choose matching literary works (novels, poetry and short stories) as well as cultural texts (films, TV and animation) for illustration. The course, being necessarily interdisciplinary in nature, again serves as an important testing ground for the philosophy of our MA programme as a whole. One of the objectives of this course is for students to develop new directions of awareness particularly in relation to the module of “environment and technology” in liberal studies. The ultimate aim is for students, after taking this course, to be able to guide the younger generation to better shape the relationship between humans and nature into the future.
Eng. 510 Literature and Visual Culture

1 Term; 3 Credits

Literature has had an ambivalent relationship to the visual arts. This course explores how the verbal arts and the visual arts inform one another and challenge the reading/viewing experience. Students are introduced to some key theoretical debates about visual culture and literary writing, and have the opportunity to engage with a diverse range of texts drawn from many genres (poetry, fiction, essays, painting, photography, comic books, and to a lesser extent, film). Topics covered include ekphrasis, textual illustration, the case of poet-painters, what has been termed “word painting” and the cinematic adaptation of literary texts. Special emphasis is placed on the resurgent and fluid genre of comic books (or graphic novels), texts traditionally regarded as juvenile or lowbrow. Students are thus encouraged to reflect on the ways such texts go beyond youthful subcultures and handle topical matters such as personal development, ethnic identity, social power, or trauma.

Eng. 511 Language, Culture and Society

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course presents and elucidates the interconnectedness between language, culture and society. It is the aim of the course to direct student to an in-depth and critical discussion on the major issues related to language, culture and society. Issues like culture and language development, culture, language and verbal art, language and social relations, language and cultural identity, language, culture and thought, language variation as well as language change will be discussed.
Eng. 512 Hong Kong Cultural Production
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course examines Hong Kong cultural production in the areas of theatre, cinema and literature. Various cultural texts including cinematic and literary texts will be examined to explore the relationship between Hong Kong cultural production and Hong Kong cultural identity and analyses the nature and problems of Hong Kong cultural production. This course also provides an interdisciplinary analysis of globalization on Hong Kong culture. Emphasis will be placed on the complex nature of the global-local dynamics.

Eng. 513 M.A. Dissertation
1 Term; 3 Credits
The project enables students to pursue independent research on a selected topic under the guidance of an advisor. It gives students who evidence initiative, originality, intellectual maturity and a desire to commit themselves to genuine scholarship an opportunity to write a graduate dissertation. Through this writing exercise, students are expected to synthesize knowledge they have learned in their undergraduate study and that acquired in this Programme in an interdisciplinary approach.
Department of History

The Department provides a student-oriented undergraduate programme aiming at enabling the students:

1. To possess an in-depth knowledge of Chinese history, balanced with a comprehensive understanding of world history;
2. To gain a historical perspective upon their identity and responsibilities as citizens of Hong Kong and China in an increasingly globalized world;
3. To acquire a range of generic skills for both work and further studies.

The course schedule for the four-year Bachelor of Arts (Hons.) in History programme is listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

First Year (Total number of credits required: 37)

Language Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 101-2</td>
<td>First Year Chinese</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 131-2</td>
<td>Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates) #</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 111-2</td>
<td>English Usage</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Exemption is allowed from Chi. 131-2 based on an exemption test held in late August.

Departmental Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 110</td>
<td>Introduction to Chinese History</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 120</td>
<td>Introduction to World History to 1500 A.D.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hist. 130  Introduction to Historical Theories and Methods ...... 3 - 
Phil. 113  Logic................................................................. - 3 

**Complementary Electives** (must choose at least 9 credits from the following list)

Comp. 101  Introduction to Information Technology ................. 3 - 
Comp. 204  Web Page Development ......................................... - 3 
Econ. 100  Introduction to Economics..................................... 3 (3) 
Jour. 100  Introduction to Journalism & Mass Communication ... 3 - 
Jour. 120  Introduction to Political Science............................ - 3 
Law 110  Introduction to Law................................................ 3 - 
P.E. 103  Physical Education.................................................. 2 - 
P.E. 104  Physical Education.................................................. - 2 
Phil. 103  Introduction to Philosophy...................................... 3 - 
Psy. 100  Introductory Psychology........................................... (3) 3 
Soc. 103  Introduction to Anthropology.................................. 3 (3) 
Soc. 107  Understanding Sociology........................................ 3 (3) 

**Total number of credits for First Year courses**

Language Requirements: 16 
Departmental Requirements: 12 
Complementary Electives: 9 
Total: 37 

**Second Year** (Total number of credits required: 33)

**Language Requirement**

Eng. 211-2  English Writing...................................................... 3 3

**Departmental Requirements**

Hist. 210  History of Qin-Han-Wei-Jin Dynasties..................... 3 - 
Hist. 211  History of Sui and Tang Dynasties...........................- 3 
Hist. 220  The Modern World.................................................. 3 -
Hist. 230  Study of Chinese Historical Sources and Materials ... 3
Hist. 240  History of Hong Kong ................................. 3

**Departmental Electives** (must choose 3 credits from the following list)

Hist. 241  From Colony to SAR: Reunification & Challenges in Contemporary Hong Kong .................. 3 (3)
Hist. 250  Cultural Contacts between Chinese & Non-Chinese Civilizations ........................................ 3
Hist. 252  Globalization and China .................................. 3
Hist. 275  The Great World Wars .................................. 3

**Complementary Electives** (must choose 9 credits from the following list)

Bus. 120  Principles and Practice of Management .............. 3
Chi. 112  Shi Ji .................................................................. 3
Chi. 180  Introduction to Chinese Culture .......................... 3
Coun. 110A  Personal Growth ............................................ 2
Chi. 251-2  Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates) .......... 1 1
Eng. 140  Introduction to Translation ................................ 3
Eng. 153  Introduction to Cultural Studies .......................... 3
Jour. 160  Current Social Issues in Hong Kong .................. 3
Jour. 221-2  News Reporting and Writing in Chinese .......... 3 3
Soc. 110  Understanding Capitalism ................................... 3
Soc. 204  Cultures in the Contemporary World .................. 3
Soc. 208  Hong Kong Society and Culture .......................... 3

**AND: All Complementary Electives listed under First Year**

**Total number of credits for Second Year courses**

Language Requirement: 6
Departmental Requirements: 15
Departmental Electives: 3
Complementary Electives: 9
Total: 33

**Third Year (Total number of credits required: 30)**
### Departmental Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 310</td>
<td>History of Song and Yuan Dynasties</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 311</td>
<td>History of Ming and Qing Dynasties</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 320</td>
<td>The Contemporary World</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 330</td>
<td>Study of Western and Chinese Historiography</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 340</td>
<td>Economic History of Hong Kong since 1949</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Departmental Electives (must choose 9 credits from the following list)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 350</td>
<td>China &amp; Europe in the Making of the Modern World</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 360</td>
<td>History of Chinese Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 361</td>
<td>Historical Geography of China</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 364</td>
<td>Chinese Business Community in Southeast Asia</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 370</td>
<td>The Developmental Experience of Modern Western</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 371</td>
<td>The Making of Contemporary Middle East</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 470</td>
<td>Sino-US Relations</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complementary Electives (must choose 6 credits from the following list)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 360</td>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 430</td>
<td><em>Zuo Zhuan</em></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 260</td>
<td>The History of Chinese Economy</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 230</td>
<td>Technological Change &amp; Human Communication</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 208</td>
<td>Hong Kong Society and Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AND: All Complementary Electives listed under First and Second Years**

### Total number of credits for Third Year courses

- **Departmental Requirements:** 15
- **Departmental Electives:** 9
- **Complementary Electives:** 6
- **Total:** 30

**Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 24)**
Departmental Requirements
- Hist. 410 Republican China
- Hist. 411 China since 1949
- Hist. 440 Hong Kong and the Pearl River Delta: Economic and Social Change since 1978

Departmental Electives (must choose 15 credits from the following list)
- Hist. 430 Study of Chinese Historical Texts
- Hist. 450 China in the Contemporary World
- Hist. 460 Intellectual History of Modern China
- Hist. 461 History of USA: Key Issues and Themes
- Hist. 462 The Making of Modern Japan
- Hist. 463 Cities in Modern China
- Hist. 466 Issues & Controversies in Traditional Chinese History
- Hist. 467 Issues & Controversies in Modern Chinese History
- Hist. 468-9 Thesis

AND: All Departmental Electives listed under Third Year

Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses
- Departmental Requirements: 9
- Departmental Electives: 15
- Total: 24
Hist. 110 Introduction to Chinese History  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course seeks to stimulate students' interest in Chinese history by alerting them to the uniqueness of their own heritage. It introduces selected features and themes of Chinese political, social, intellectual and economical traditions. Alongside largely chronological discussions, the examination of each of the selected issues focuses on the "source and development" of its main features, followed by a review of the challenges it faces nowadays.

Hist. 120 Introduction to World History to 1500 A.D.  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This first year required course seeks to help students understand concisely the development of major cultural centres and regions of the world as background preparation to understanding the shaping of the modern world dominated by peoples from Europe. Alongside largely chronological discussions, the organization of the course is centred on one macro-theme, i.e., the rise and fall of civilizations/empires, complemented by an examination of selected issues on the varied attitudes and patterns of interactions among the major cultural regions.

Hist. 130 Introduction to Historical Theories and Methods  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This subject introduces to students the nature, basic concepts,
theories of History as an academic discipline, as well as its special challenges and expectations. The course places a special emphasis on training students in basic research skills and methods for historical investigations and presentation of findings.

**Hist. 210 History of Qin-Han-Wei-Jin Dynasties**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The subject examines the development of Qin, Han and Wei, Jin dynasties through lectures and tutorials. Coverage includes important themes in politics, military, institutions, personalities, ideologies, culture and international relations etc in this period of Chinese history. It also aims at preparing students to do future research in this area.

**Hist. 211 History of Sui and Tang Dynasties**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The subject examines the development of Sui and Tang dynasties through lectures and tutorials. Coverage includes important themes in politics, military, institutions, personalities, ideologies, culture and international relations etc in this period of Chinese history. The subject also aims at preparing students to undertake research on these particular dynasties.

**Hist. 220 The Modern World**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This second year required course explores the birth and unfolding of the modern world after 1500 A.D. It examines how European nations expanded to dominate most of the other continents
and the development of transoceanic, global system of colonial empires. In addition to major political, diplomatic and military developments, attention will be given to socio-economic, scientific, intellectual and cultural changes to explain Europe’s rise. Attempts will be made to include responses, consequences and comments on such dramatic expansion and dominance from non-European perspectives to prevent an overly Western-centered or Eurocentric approach to world history.

(Note: This course is supplemented by Hist. 350 China and Europe in the Making of the Modern World which examines in more depth interactions on different fronts between China and Europe.)

Hist. 230 Study of Chinese Historical Sources and Materials
1 Term; 3 Credits

This second year course familiarizes students to two major categories of Chinese source materials: archaeological discoveries and historical documents. It introduces students to crucial latest archaeological finds in China and their contributions to the understanding of Chinese history, especially of the earlier dynasties. Secondly, it examines key official and unofficial documents bequeathed to us in the long historiographical tradition of Chinese scholars of the past dynasties.

Hist. 240 History of Hong Kong
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is an introduction to the development of Hong Kong from a fishing outpost on the South China coast into an international metropolis of over 7 million inhabitants. The focus is on the
political, social, cultural and economic transformation of Hong Kong under a century and a half of British colonial rule up to the 1980s, when the Sino-British agreement ushered in a period leading to the resumption of sovereignty by the People’s Republic of China on 1 July 1997. The first part of the course is a chronological survey of the major developments of colonial Hong Kong, whereas the second part adopts a thematic approach to delineate the historical forces behind those developments.

**Hist. 241 From Colony to SAR: Reunification & Challenges in Contemporary Hong Kong**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course examines problems and challenges confronting Hong Kong, including political, social, economic and other issues arising from its evolution from a British colony to a Chinese special administrative region under the "One Country, Two Systems" principle. The course seeks to stimulate among students an awareness of crucial issues affecting their motherland particularly since Hong Kong’s return to China and an interest in examining them to develop a basic, comprehensive understanding of major issues affecting the development of Hong Kong. In addition to historical sources, students will examine contemporary reports and analyses of selected major issues in this course.

**Hist. 250 Cultural Contacts between Chinese & Non-Chinese Civilizations**

1 Term; 3 Credits

Since the beginning of last century, research on the Silk Road
during the period from Han to Tang dynasty has been an important issue among domestic and international scholars. With new archaeological discoveries unearthed during the past decades, it has received more attention to become an international academic subject.

The course topics include the following: 1) Introduction, 2) Silk Road: a route of exchange of Eastern and Western Civilizations, 3) Zhang Qian (張騫): access to the Western Regions, 4) The introduction of Buddhism to China, 5) The Spread of Buddhism during the Southern and Northern dynasties, 6) Chang-an and Western Civilization in the Tang dynasty, 7) Sogdian (粟特人) and Zhaowu Jiuxing (昭武九姓), 8) Zoroastrianism (琐羅亞斯德教), Manichaeism (摩尼教) and Nestorianism (景教) in the Tang dynasty, 9) Spread of China’s Four Inventions to the West, 10) Zheng He’s (鄭和) Maritime Expeditions, 11) The arrival of Western civilization in China during late Ming dynasty, and 12) Confucianism in Europe.

**Hist. 252 Globalization and China**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The second-year elective course surveys the development of globalization and contemporary China, both being “core area” issues/modules in Liberal Studies in Hong Kong. The subject introduces globalization, its worldwide transforming power, basic assumptions, theories and main manifestation as well as China’s response and adaptation to it, amidst its spectacular rise; with discussion on their combined impact on the making of the contemporary world. In addition to reviewing concisely key historical stages/events in the unfolding of globalization and development in China, the subject discusses the interplay of the two in politics, economy, world
resources and environment, society and culture. The subject is capped with an open forum on selected issues on impacts and challenges that globalization poses to China and how the Asian giant dealt with them proactively; at times negotiating and, in certain fronts, aggressively “re-defining” globalization to its own advantage.

**Hist. 260 The History of Chinese Economy**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This is an introductory course on the history of Chinese economy. The course is divided into two parts. The first part provides a general description of the economic development since ancient times. It gives students an understanding of the trends of Chinese economic development and the principles underlying the economic changes. The second part focuses on some of the important issues in Chinese economic history. The selected topics are studied in depth and it is expected that students will be able to acquire some of the economic research methods being used in Chinese economic history. Moreover, some of the traditional Chinese economic classics will be introduced to students which aims at developing students’ ability to appreciate ancient Chinese economic literature.

**Hist. 275 The Great World Wars**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This second-year elective course attempts a concise overview of the two world wars, including causes, conduct of war, results and impacts, which differentiated human conflicts in the first half of the twentieth century from those of previous centuries and which had left crucial imprints on the shaping of the contemporary world. In
addition to key historical events, the course examines economic factors, political thought, propaganda, mass politics, technological advances and roles of key figures and their impact on attitudes towards the economics and conduct of war. It will also survey how the deployment of hi-tech weaponry defined the nature, scale and devastation caused in modern warfare. The subject is capped with an open forum on selected issues and themes, including perspectives and considerations of opponents in the wars, roots of their differences to understand the rise of massive conflicts between nations.

**Hist. 310 History of Song and Yuan Dynasties**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course covers the histories of Song and Yuan dynasties, as well as those of Liao, Western Xia and Jin. It aims to introduce to students through lectures the political, military, social and cultural aspects of their histories. It attempts to show the process of change and the historical significance of these Chinese dynasties.

**Hist. 311 History of Ming and Qing Dynasties**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course traces the chronological development of political, social, economic, literary and intellectual concepts and institutions in these two dynasties. Emphasis is on the impact of selected major events and changes on the rise and fall of these dynasties including, for example, Ming Despotism and eunuchs, the rise of the Manchu, and the zenith of the Qing Dynasty.
Hist. 320 The Contemporary World  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This third-year required world history survey course attempts a concise overview of changes shaping the contemporary world from 1900 to the present, including the transition from European to American global dominance, opposition and challenges to their supremacy, and the recent emergence of regional blocs. In addition to key historical events, the course focuses on factors and forces, particularly perceived interests and advantages as well as concepts or arguments put forth by opposing camps and blocs, including "new" versus "old" themes and the assumed continued validity of the latter. The actions of dominant players on the world stage and the impact and control they levied on world resources will be examined. The ways in which those on the receiving end were affected by such controls, their reactions and the consequences will also be studied to reveal the causes of some of the major conflicts in the world. The course will conclude with an open forum on selected current issues which have a significant impact on the current world scene, with particular reference to their historical roots and global implications.

Hist. 330 Study of Western and Chinese Historiography  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces the developments of Chinese and Western historiography from ancient times to the last century, the establishment of official and unofficial historians, the characteristics and commentary of historical works and the syllabi of traditional historiography. Prominent historians, ancient and contemporary, as well as their works will be discussed. Attention will also be paid to
the new orientation of historiography in connection with social, economic and cultural studies, the archaeological discoveries, and the verifications of historical events.

This third year required course on the study of History as a discipline surveys the development of historiography, defined as the tradition of history writing, in both the West and China. It aims at introducing to students the various stages of development with their respective historical legacies up to the 20th century. At the same time, distinguished historians and their works are examined in the light of their contributions to historical scholarship.

Hist. 340 Economic History of Hong Kong since 1949

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course analyses the stages of transformation of the economy of Hong Kong, from an entrepot to an industrialized economy, and then to a service-based economy. It focuses on examining the various policy factors such as free market competition and positive non-intervention, as well as the agents of change like foreign investors and local entrepreneurs in helping to shape such an economic success story of the city. It also examines the extent of Hong Kong’s economic integration with that of mainland China before and after the city has been turned into a Special Administration Region of China in July of 1997.

Hist. 350 China & Europe in the Making of the Modern World

1 Term; 3 Credits

This elective course is a “sequel” to Hist. 220 The Modern World with a specific focus on the interaction between the West and
the "Sinicized" East Asia represented by China. A thematic approach is adopted to examine major social, political, cultural and economic developments affecting the interaction of the two sides, to explore contributing factors to the "Rise of the West" versus the "Decline of China" over this past half century, which had helped shape the modern world.

**Hist. 360 History of Chinese Culture**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course scrutinizes the evolvement of Confucianism, Daoism, and Buddhism in China and the transformation of Chinese intellectual and social thoughts and mass mentality from antiquity to modern days. It emphasizes the continuity and change of those cultural thoughts throughout Chinese history, and the socio-political and economic factors that have given rise to their development and certain challenges they face in modern society. This also encourages critical and creative thinking about Chinese culture and what makes it distinctly "Chinese" by delineating the basic assumptions underlying Chinese thought and behaviour. In comparing China, where appropriate, with other civilizations this course also aims to highlight the cultural heritage that we as human beings commonly share.

**Hist. 361 Historical Geography of China**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to introduce students to the historical development and changes of different regions in China. Relevant materials extracted from historical works are studied. Main topics
include the following: 1) Introduction, 2) Ancient climatic changes in China, 3) Development of the border areas, 4) Population history of ancient and medieval China, 5) Changes in the course of flow of the Yellow River and Yangtze River, 6) Canal building in ancient and medieval China, 7) The origin and development of cities in Chinese history.

The course aims to:
1) introduce the history of ancient China’s natural and human geography;
2) examine the relationship between these aspects and China’s history; and
3) introduce the scholarly achievements of Chinese historical geographers.

Upon completion of the course, students will be able to:

a) understand the development and characteristics of China’s historical geography;

b) explicate the relationship between geography and social and political developments in ancient China; and

c) evaluate the work of Chinese historical geographers.
Hist. 364 Chinese Business Community in Southeast Asia and Hong Kong

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course discusses the millions of Chinese who migrated to Southeast Asia and Hong Kong from the mid-19th to the mid-20th centuries to become overseas Chinese. While most of them would remain in the lower social stratum, working as labourers and shop assistants and the like in the host countries, some would move up socially to become affluent members of the Chinese business communities, with a few distinguished ones becoming entrepreneurs and community leaders. How and why such diversification of socio-economic patterns took place in different overseas Chinese communities will be analysed in the context of the policy regimes of the resident countries, and in the light of the successful playing out or otherwise of Chinese business practices and entrepreneurship.

Hist. 370 The Developmental Experience of Modern Western Economic Powers: Study of Selected Cases

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims at tracing and analysing the rise of three western economic powers, each with its unique resource-endowment in the modern times and implications for other aspirant countries. It seeks to explain how insular Britain, landlocked Germany and continent-wide United States could all succeed in pioneering the establishment of an industrialized economic system, and how their individual policy regimes tackled problems arising at various phases of the Industrial Revolution since the mid-18th century. Besides domestic growth, the subject also covers the global expansion of these
economies till the outbreak of the First World War, after which the economic balance began to tilt towards the United States.

**Hist. 371 The Making of Contemporary Middle East**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This third-year elective course attempts a concise overview of the historical process and analysis of the main forces shaping contemporary Middle East — an area of lasting ethnic, political and religious conflicts, crises and mutual hatred which draws grave global concern. The subject covers the disintegration of the Islamic Ottoman Empire, European trusteeship during the two world wars, varied development paths and achievement, USA involvement and the emergence of the Middle East today. Of central concern are the policies and acts of Western powers which might have contributed to much of its present woes. In addition, the course studies the Middle East with consideration to its place in world diplomacy, geopolitics and economy. The course will conclude with an open forum on selected current issues with significant impact on the present world scene, with particular reference to their historical roots and global implications.

**Hist. 410 Republican China**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course covers the setting up, development and fall of the Nationalist Government in Mainland China from 1912 to 1949. Discussions will include main events and metamorphosis of Chinese politics, economy, diplomacy and military affairs etc, their causes
and impacts. In particular, the subject will examine in depth the Chinese experience in establishing a democratic-republican polity and the party and state systems which eventually appeared.

**Hist. 411 China since 1949**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is about the historical development of the People’s Republic of China since 1949. It examines the changes and challenges brought by historical transformations and political conflicts. The course also analyses their political, economic, diplomatic and military impacts and implications on future development in China.

**Hist. 430 Study of Chinese Historical Texts**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This is a course on the in-depth study of two seminal Chinese historical texts — Shi Ji (史記) and Zizhi Tongjian (資治通鑑). It deepens students’ understanding of the Chinese historical tradition taught in Years 2 and 3 through examining the circumstances against which these two historical works were written, the various annotations and interpretations that other Chinese scholars wrote on the two texts, and the different uses of the two texts in the development of Chinese historical research.

**Hist. 440 Hong Kong and the Pearl River Delta: Economic and Social Change since 1978**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course analyses the changes in the nature and degree of linkage between Hong Kong and Guangdong’s Pearl River Delta
(PRD) since the early 20th century till the recent past. The year 1978 is used as an important turning point to highlight how the nature of Guangdong-centred political impact on Hong Kong shifted to a Hong Kong-centred economic impact on the PRD as historical circumstances changed before and after that year. The degree of linkage, especially economic, social and cultural also evolves in the post-1978 years, from interdependency between Hong Kong and the PRD to a closer integration between the two areas. This process of the integration, nevertheless, is extending to a much broader geographical area, the Pan-Pearl River Delta region, between the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region and its neighbours.

Hist. 450 China in the Contemporary World

1 Term; 3 Credits

This elective subject is the third in the series of "China and the World" to "bridge" the Chinese History and World survey clusters. After a survey of China's position and relations with the World since the 21st century, the subject examines major issues in China's often stormy and argumentative interactions with other parts of the world in politics, economy, values, health, environment, energy, resources, military, balance of power and mutual perceptions etc, with a special focus on its relations with the major powers since its dramatic economic reforms in the 1970s.
Hist. 460 Intellectual History of Modern China

1 Term; 3 Credits

This is a history of the intellectual odyssey of the modern Chinese intelligentsia from late Qing through the founding of the People's Republic in 1949. Increasingly alienated from the old order after the abortive 1898 reforms, and confronted with the need for national survival, members of the highly nationalist intelligentsia rejected Chinese, specifically Confucian, culture in total favour of “scientism” and “democracy” during the New Culture and May Fourth period. After 1919, the ideological split within the ranks of the intellectuals turned many disillusioned with the capitalist West to socialist ideas, including Marxian communism, and others to a new interpretation of Confucianism. This course also examines the ascendancy of Communism in the early 1920s within the socialist discourse, and the Sinicization of Communism, culminating in the formation of Mao Zedong Thought in the 1940s.

Hist. 461 History of USA: Key Issues and Themes

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is a concise history of the United States of America, beginning from British colonization through the “American Century” which has arguably extended into the 21st World. In addition to the chronological historical narrative, the subject includes discussion on selected key events, issues, factors and forces which have together shaped the country’s unique experience, its characteristics and impact on the globalized world. In addition, it provides a forum to review and assess some of the nation’s announced goals or assertions such as the “Manifest Destiny”, “American Exceptionalism”,
and assumed leadership in the World etc.

**Hist. 462 The Making of Modern Japan**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to study the political, social, economic and military developments of modern Japan with emphasis on the following topics: traditional elements facilitating Japan’s modernization; key modernization actions taken in the late Tokugawa and Meiji periods; political changes and development beginning at the Taisho period; the rise of militarism between the two world wars and Japanese invasion of Asia; the post-war constitutional reform, economic recovery and cultural changes; and the role of Japan in current international scene and main internal and external factors affecting its path. Capping the discussion would be an open forum in which Japan’s experience would be compared with one or two of its Asian neighbours.

**Hist. 463 Cities in Modern China**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This subject examines the development of cities in Modern China, their characteristics and roles, with an emphasis on the underlying forces that contributed to their progress and the changing urban-rural relations at various key stages in Modern Chinese history.
**Hist. 466 Issues & Controversies in Traditional Chinese History**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This subject is one of two specially designed courses for senior students to pursue in-depth re-examination of selected crucial and/or controversial issues/themes or main actors in traditional Chinese history under the guidance of a senior scholar. It provides a forum in which students will read intensively both under guidance and independently, prepare and engage in informed oral presentation, discussion and/or debates, and produce written project reports. Undertakings in the subject are expected to refresh students’ previous knowledge on selected study targets, to broaden, deepen and update their knowledge and expose them to contending interpretations and narratives. The subject is also recommended for History Honours degree students not writing the thesis.

**Hist. 467 Issues & Controversies in Modern Chinese History**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This subject is one of two specially designed courses for senior students to pursue in-depth re-examination of selected crucial and/or controversial issues/themes or main actors in modern and contemporary Chinese history under the guidance of a senior scholar. It seeks to provide an opportunity not usually afforded in traditional dynastic or periodized Chinese history courses to senior level students for them to re-acquaint with crucial and/or controversial issues in modern and contemporary China, exposing them to updated academic findings, conflicting or contending interpretations so they may refresh and apply their historical knowledge to develop a more mature, balanced and open-minded approach to historical
studies. The subject provides a forum in which students will read intensively both under guidance and independently, prepare and engage in informed oral presentation, discussion and/or debates, and produce written project reports. The subject is also recommended for History Honours degree students not writing the graduation thesis, and, with adequate revision and strengthening, also for postgraduate programmes in the future.

**Hist. 468-9 Thesis**

2 Terms; 6 Credits

With a view to developing student’s ability to integrate what they have learnt in separate subjects over the past 4 academic years, students on this course are required to submit a thesis based on the findings of a research topic in history approved by the Department. Students will, with advice from teachers, select a worthy research topic, conduct historical research, produce outline, bibliography and write a thesis conforming to all requirements regarding style and format – including its drafts, revision and the final version.

**Hist. 470 Sino-US Relations**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The subject alerts students to important imprints Sino-American relations has left on the making of contemporary China, and acquaints them with major controversial and contentious issues between the two nations which could seriously affect their respective development paths now and in the foreseeable future. A brief review on the history of their interactions is followed by discussion on se-
lected themes/issues, including conflicting assumptions, goals, actions/intervention and responses of the two, particularly those highly controversial, contentious and recurrent in nature to assess their national, regional or wider ramifications. In sum, the subject urges our future leaders to study the most important external factor affecting China, provides them with background information and introduces them to main issues/arguments they need to learn to tackle.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(SERVICE COURSES)

Hist. 100 General Chinese History
1 Term; 3 Credits

The objective of this course is to help students be aware of their heritage from the past for better understanding of the present. Extracts from relevant historical materials and works of modern historians are studied. Topics in the course will cover various major aspects of Chinese history and tradition including the birth and spread of the Chinese traditional political, legal, social, economic, intellectual values and systems as well as their major historical changes.

Hist. 180 Introduction to the Study of the PRC
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course introduces major aspects of development in China since 1949. After a brief chronological introduction to the establishment of the present government, the course will offer four required core topics on historical, political, economic and social issues of contemporary China. In addition, elective topics on our country's culture, national defence and foreign relations will also be offered.

Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of History, please refer to their respective Departments for details.
The Department offers applied journalism education to those who seek to work in the media industry in Hong Kong as well as in Southeast Asia. The Department was launched in 1971, and has become one of the major Journalism and Public Relations & Advertising (PRA) teaching establishments in Hong Kong. Students are trained to possess language proficiency and learn the process and impact of communication in a variety of social contexts. In addition, students are educated to have a broad-based knowledge in Humanities and Social Sciences such as History, Sociology, Psychology, Political Science, Economics and Law in order to cultivate their analytical ability with an open mind and be able to have a fair, impartial and independent view-point.

In the first two years students will receive training in foundation subjects while in the third and fourth years they will delve more deeply into the theory and practice of journalism and mass communication in the age of digitization. For a rounded training, they are exposed to news reporting and writing, news translation, radio and TV news production, new media platforms, editorial and commentary writing and script writing and/or marketing, public relations and advertising, so that they will be well prepared for their future careers.

For practical experience, students are required to participate in activities organized by themselves such as SY Media Lab, Our Voice (仁聞報), Our Voice Online, Shuo Online (說·在線), online audio and video platforms, bloggers like hongkongnews.syu.edu.hk and chinanews.syu.edu.hk, radio and television workshops and Shue Yan Newsletter etc.
The Department also offers an extensive internship programme for all qualified students. Students will be provided with professional internship training in partial fulfilment of the degree programme at commercial or educational television and radio stations, newspapers, magazines, advertising agencies, marketing and advertising department of various public and private corporations in order to enable them to have hands-on experience in the industry.

The four-year honours degree programme in Journalism and Mass Communication started in 2001 and the first batch of graduates appeared in summer 2005. A total of 124 credits with a minimum of 51 credits in Journalism and Communication is required for graduation. Twenty-five credits of the 73 non-concentration credits must be in Chinese and English language course work while the other 48 credits will be course work in complementary departments, such as Sociology, History, Economics and Finance, Business and Law.

The course list for the four years of the honours degree programme is as follows:
Bachelor of Arts (Hons.) in Journalism and Mass Communication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Credits</th>
<th>1st Term</th>
<th>2nd Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**First Year (Total number of credits required: 34)**

### Language Requirements
- Chi. 101-2 First Year Chinese ..................................................... 4 4
- Eng. 111-2 English Usage ........................................................... 3 3
- Jour. 161-2 Use of Putonghua in Journalism & Communication .. 1 1

### Departmental Core Requirements
- Jour. 100 Introduction to Journalism & Mass Communication ... 3 -
- Jour. 130 Digital Photojournalism ............................................. (3) 3
- PRA. 130 Principles of Advertising and Marketing ..................... - 3

### Electives (choose 9 credits)

#### Departmental Electives
- Jour. 120 Introduction to Political Science ......................... 3 (3)
- Jour. 121 International Relations and Organizations ................. 3
- Jour. 160 Current Social Issues in Hong Kong ....................... 3 (3)
- Jour. 170 Visual Communication .............................................. (3) 3
- Jour. 180 History of Hong Kong Journalism ......................... 3 (3)

#### Complementary Electives
E lectives offered from other contributing Departments (see pages 193-194)

### Total number of credits for First Year courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language Requirements:</th>
<th>16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Departmental Core Requirements:</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electives:</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total:</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Second Year (Total number of credits required: 30)

Language Requirement
Eng. 211-2 English Writing .......................................................... 3 3

Departmental Core Requirements
Jour. 220 Mass Communication Theories .................................. - 3
Jour. 221 News Reporting and Writing in Chinese I ............... 3 -
Jour. 222 News Reporting and Writing in Chinese II ............. 3 -

Electives (choose 15 credits)

Departmental Electives
Jour. 200 Statistics for Journalism #........................................ 3 -
Jour. 201 Audio-Visual Production #........................................ 3 (3)
Jour. 230 Technological Change & Human Communication .... (3) 3
Jour. 250 Introduction to Mass Media in China ........................ - 3
Jour. 260 Computer Graphic Design and Publishing .............. 3 (3)
Jour. 261-2 Putonghua for Journalism ..................................... 1 1
Jour. 280 Governing Hong Kong .............................................. 3 3
PRA. 200 Public Relations and the Media ................................. (3) 3

Complementary Electives
Electives offered from other contributing Departments (see page 194)

# Core elective for all Second Year students

Total number of credits for Second Year courses
Language Requirement: 6
Departmental Core Requirements: 9
Electives: 15
Total: 30
### Third Year (Total number of credits required: 30)

#### Language Requirement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 303</td>
<td>English News Writing and Reporting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Departmental Core Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 311</td>
<td>Communication Research Methods</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 370</td>
<td>Mass Communication Law</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 371</td>
<td>Newspaper Practicum</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Core Electives: Must choose any four from the following (12 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 300</td>
<td>News Editing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 323</td>
<td>Mobile Journalism</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 330</td>
<td>Radio News Reporting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 340</td>
<td>TV News</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRA. 310</td>
<td>Advertising Copywriting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRA. 320</td>
<td>Public Relations Disciplines</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRA. 330</td>
<td>Advertising Strategies and Design</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRA. 350</td>
<td>Public Relations Writing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Electives (choose 6 credits)

##### Departmental Electives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 301</td>
<td>Intermediate Audio-Visual Production</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 310</td>
<td>Storytelling</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 312</td>
<td>Public Opinion Polls</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 320</td>
<td>News Translation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 350</td>
<td>Feature Writing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 360</td>
<td>Magazine Writing and Editing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 380</td>
<td>Business and Financial Reporting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 390</td>
<td>Computer Animation in Journalism &amp; Communication</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 395</td>
<td>Social Media and Networked Communication</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRA. 340</td>
<td>Event Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### Complementary Electives

Electives offered from other contributing Departments (see pages 194-195)
Total number of credits for Third Year courses

Language Requirement: 3
Departmental Core Requirements: 21
Electives: 6
Total: 30

Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 30)

Departmental Core Requirements

Jour. 403 Professional Internship ................................................. 3 -
Jour. 410 Media Ethics ................................................................... 3 (3)

Core Electives: Must choose any two from the following (6 credits)

Jour. 400 Editorial and Commentary Writing ............................... 3 (3)
Jour. 470 In-Depth and Investigative Reporting ............................ 3 (3)
Jour. 480 China Reporting ........................................................... 3 (3)
Jour. 490 Documentary and Public Affairs Programmes ............ 3 -
PRA. 420 Integrated Marketing Strategies and Planning ............. 3 (3)
PRA. 430 Audio-Visual Production in PRA .................................... 3 (3)
PRA. 440 Advertising Agency Account Planning ....................... 3 (3)
PRA. 450 Crisis Management ......................................................... 3 (3)

Electives (choose 18 credits)

Departmental Electives

Jour. 420 Press Policy and Law of China ................................. 3 (3)
Jour. 431 Script Writing .............................................................. 3 (3)
Jour. 440 Entertainment and Pop Culture ................................. 3 (3)
Jour. 441-2 Honours Project (Dissertation) or ......................... 3 3
Jour. 450 Honours Project (In-Depth Reporting / Video Production) ................................................................. 3 -
Jour. 460 Digitization and Interactive Multimedia ...................... 3 (3)
PRA. 460 Media Planning .............................................................. 3 (3)
Complementary Electives
Electives offered from other contributing Departments (see pages 194-195)

Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses
Departmental Core Requirements: 12
Electives: 18
Total: 30

Grand Total Credits for Programme
Language: 25
Journalism & Communication Core: 51
Electives: 48
Grand Total Credits: 124

The total credits required for graduation is 124. All JMC students are required to take 51 credits from the core curriculum, 25 credits from the languages, and 48 credits from Elective Courses.

Complementary Electives for the First year
Acct. 100   Financial Accounting ............................................... 3 -
Bus. 100    Introduction to Business ........................................... 3 -
Bus. 120    Principles and Practice of Management ...................... 3 -
Econ. 100   Introduction to Economics ......................................... 3 (3)
Eng. 140    Introduction to Translation ....................................... (3) 3
Eng. 153    Introduction to Cultural Studies ................................. 3 -
Fren. 191   French I .............................................................. 3 -
Hist. 100   General Chinese History ............................................ 3 (3)
Hist. 180   Introduction to the Study of the PRC ......................... (3) 3
P.E. 103    Physical Education ..................................................... 2 -
P.E. 104    Physical Education ..................................................... 2 -
Phil. 103   Introduction to Philosophy .......................................... 3 -
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phil. 113</td>
<td>Logic</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 100</td>
<td>Introductory Psychology</td>
<td>(3) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 107</td>
<td>Understanding Sociology</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 150</td>
<td>Critical Thinking</td>
<td>(3) 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complementary Electives for the Second Year**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 200</td>
<td>Cost and Management Accounting</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 233</td>
<td>The Economy of Hong Kong</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 240</td>
<td>History of Hong Kong</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 241</td>
<td>From Colony to SAR: Reunification and Challenges in Contemporary Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 252</td>
<td>Globalization and China</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 260</td>
<td>The History of Chinese Economy</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 204</td>
<td>Cultures in the Contemporary World</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 208</td>
<td>Hong Kong Society and Culture</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 233</td>
<td>Contemporary Social Issues</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 255</td>
<td>Philosophy through Film and Literature</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 257</td>
<td>Art and Society</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AND: All Electives listed under First Year**

**Complementary Electives for the Third and Fourth Years**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 303B</td>
<td>Business Communication</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 309</td>
<td>Human Resource Management</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 330</td>
<td>China Marketing</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 440</td>
<td>Industrial Relations and Labour Law</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 320</td>
<td>International Trade</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 323</td>
<td>The Economy of Contemporary China</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 335</td>
<td>Popular Culture</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 444</td>
<td>Financial Institutions in Hong Kong</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 445</td>
<td>Regulation and Management of Financial Institutions in Hong Kong</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 371</td>
<td>The Making of Contemporary Middle East</td>
<td>- 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 440</td>
<td>Hong Kong and the Pearl River Delta: Economic and Social Change since 1978</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 450</td>
<td>China in the Contemporary World</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 461</td>
<td>History of USA: Key Issues</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 462</td>
<td>The Making of Modern Japan</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 470</td>
<td>Sino-US Relations</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 300</td>
<td>Law and Society</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 337</td>
<td>Criminology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 432</td>
<td>State and Society</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(BA DEGREE PROGRAMME)

Jour. 100 Introduction to Journalism & Mass Communication
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to develop an overview of journalism and mass communication. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define the basic pool of vocabulary and fundamental concepts necessary for advanced classes as well as a basic idea of conducting and writing a research paper; describe the roles and responsibilities of professionals in journalism, public relations and advertising, with a focus on ethics and the value of truth, accuracy and fairness; and demonstrate media literacy skills, the ability to use technology to access information and evaluate critically and creatively contemporary national and global media messages.

Jour. 120 Introduction to Political Science
1 Term; 3 Credits

The goal of this course is to provide an introduction to political science. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define basic concepts, theories and methodology in political science; describe the relationship between politics and your daily life; evaluate the functions of political institutions, the political environment surrounding you and the dynamics among political actors; and critically analyse the current issues from a political point of view.
Jour. 121 International Relations and Organizations
1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of this course is to offer an introduction to international relations and organizations. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define the different concepts and theories of international relations; describe different actors in the international arena; evaluate the dynamics of interstate interactions; explain the complicated operation of the international political system; and critically analyse the current international issues around you from a political point of view.

Jour. 130 Digital Photojournalism
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an introduction to digital photojournalism. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to demonstrate the operation of the digital SLR camera with interchangeable lens and define digital photography workflow; demonstrate appropriate photographic techniques to take fine news photographs; employ Photoshop to crop, correct exposure and adjust colour of a news photo; analyse and criticize their own, as well as other photographers’ works; and design a photographic portfolio that shows an understanding of photographic principles.

Jour. 160 Current Social Issues in Hong Kong
1 Term; 3 Credits

The goal of this course is to present an overview of current social issues in Hong Kong. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to apply the multi-disciplinary approach to study
social issues in the particular context of Hong Kong; evaluate various aspects of Hong Kong society; demonstrate basic skills in studying Hong Kong society through conducting fieldwork; assess and examine Hong Kong's social issues; and discuss and explain current social issues for publication.

**Jour. 161-2 Use of Putonghua in Journalism and Communication**

**2 Terms; 2 Credits**

This course offers Putonghua training in various areas, including speaking, reading, listening and writing. It helps students master standard Putonghua pronunciation, vocabulary and grammar; understand and master some commonly used Chinese idioms, common words associated with the news media to increase Putonghua vocabulary; and be able to skilfully use Putonghua in social life and in work in the future. The course also provides a broad understanding of China's national conditions, culture, history, and customs to deepen the understanding by the students of news media, and hence, students will be able to use common terms associated with the news media. This course integrates well Putonghua and professional news media to improve students' language skills, so that students are able to transfer the skills to future journalistic and editorial work.

**Jour. 170 Visual Communication**

**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course aims to provide students with a basic understanding of visual culture and visual communicative skills, e.g. how far
can we trust our visual capacities and the validity and efficiency of visual representations in the world around. Students will learn from literature and films the power and limits of images and visual narratives. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to explain how we see and what actually we are seeing; examine the relationship between what we see and what we know; and explain how we represent and express what we see.

**Jour. 180 History of Hong Kong Journalism**

1 Term; 3 Credits

Hong Kong has a robust press industry for over 160 years. It was the cradle of modern Chinese press. It has nurtured more than 600 press media and created a significant impact on modern and contemporary Chinese history. Therefore, this course aims to provide an introduction to the history of Hong Kong journalism. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the development of the blooming Hong Kong press industry, which plays a significant role in the history of Chinese press; develop and raise their sensitivity to local affairs and sense of belonging, and hence, their interest in knowledge exploration; analyse the various stages of development characteristics in the history of Hong Kong press; describe and judge the several forms of development of Hong Kong press; and critically carry out in-depth case studies of press in Hong Kong.

**Jour. 200 Statistics for Journalism**

1 Term; 3 Credits
The aim of this course is to develop overall concepts in statistics for journalism. Upon completion of the course students will be able to analyse, report and interpret elementary statistical data for decision making; calculate, report and interpret basic descriptive statistics, measures of central tendency and dispersion; calculate, report and interpret basic inferential statistics (such as testing difference between means, estimation, goodness-of-fit and chi square); and use SPSS to analyse and report statistical data at a preliminary level and interpret SPSS outputs (such as t-test, chi square, ANOVA and regression).

**Jour. 201 Audio-Visual Production**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The goal of this course is to provide an introduction to audio-visual production. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to explain in film language the basic skills of operating cameras, lighting, switchers, audio equipment & non-linear editing machines, with respect to ethical issues in the production process; design a good story as fiction and non-fiction directors who make sensible choices on what to shoot, how to shoot it, what to use in the video and how most effectively to use it; and demonstrate more by planning than by reflex so as to direct professionally with schedules that the crew can follow; maintain good communication skills with crew, participants and audience.

**Jour. 220 Mass Communication Theories**

1 Term; 3 Credits
This course aims to develop an overview of mass communication theory. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the various concerns relating to the complex process of mass communication faced by mass communication professionals and how they could overcome such concerns; apply the theories to the context of mass communication in Hong Kong; analyse the structure and dynamics of contemporary mass media and its impact on society; and integrate theories, concepts and analytical framework by producing an individual research project at the end of the term.

**Jour. 221-2 News Reporting and Writing in Chinese**

2 Terms; 6 Credits

This course emphasizes the principles and techniques of news gathering and writing in the Hong Kong environment. Through practical writing exercises, students will be able to master different aspects of news gathering, reporting and writing. Methods in covering crimes, courts, accidents, Legislative Council and District Board meetings etc will be discussed through constant exercises. Students are trained to present stories and features in various forms and styles. In addition, styles and structure of news stories, research and interviewing techniques form part of the study. All practical writing exercises will be conducted under strict newsroom settings and conditions.

**Jour. 230 Technological Change and Human Communication**

1 Term; 3 Credits
Modes of human communication have been radically affected by changes in the technology of communication – from orality to literacy, from handwriting to print, and from print to electronic imaging – and these changes are continuing. This course aims to explore the connections between media technologies and changing understandings of culture in the 21st century. It focuses on how innovations in print and photographic technologies, telegraphy and telephony, sound recording, radio, film exhibition, TV and video, and the transformation of analogue to digital technologies, have enabled changing visions of culture. Students will be introduced to the history of key media technologies, and they will try to theorize the significance of those technologies within cultural contexts. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to analyse critical knowledge on human communication, from paralanguage to orality, from speech to literacy, from words to images, and from analogue to digital by designing projects and written essays.

**Jour. 250 Introduction to Mass Media in China**

1 Term; 3 Credits

As Hong Kong and Mainland China are getting closer in economic ties, Hong Kong media reporting about China is also increasing and becoming more important. This course consists of two elements: one is to introduce China's basic profiles and media systems while another is to introduce China's unique way of news reporting. By comparing with Hong Kong's news reporting environments, students will become more familiar with the unique way of reporting in the Mainland. Therefore, the goal of this course is to provide a basic overview of China and the media system. Upon completion of this
course, students will be able to develop process of the major media; analyse Chinese news reports in an unique way; evaluate and compare Hong Kong and China news reports on their similarities and differences, such as China's typical Chinese news reports in its status and roles; and reflect understanding through term papers.

Jour. 260 Computer Graphic Design and Publishing
1 Term; 3 Credits

The aims of the course are to provide an introduction to the potential of computer applications to journalism students to produce professional publications, with respect to ethical issues in the production process; provide students with the basic knowledge to the issues that shape design, the design elements, and how these elements combine; enable students to participate in real-life production projects; and introduce technical skills in the application of computer graphic design, desktop publishing and online publishing softwares. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the broad issues in graphic design, editing and web publishing; demonstrate basic production techniques to prepare computer design work in both offline and online publications; and analyse contemporary design work from different perspectives.

Jour. 261-2 Putonghua for Journalism
2 Terms; 2 Credits

This course aims to enhance students’ understanding on the use of language in broadcasting. Students’ Putonghua oracy improves as training is provided according to the guidelines of the PSC Putonghua Proficiency Test. As a result, students are able to read
aloud fluently in Putonghua news scripts, journals and commentary, as well as to communicate in Putonghua in daily conversations. Students are expected to achieve higher capability in listening skills, reaching the level of 180 words per minute. In addition, students will be able to master common Chinese phrases and the pronunciation of wordings with multi vowels and meanings as well as improving the pronunciation skills in terms of common phrases. Students will also be trained up with news reporting skills and the expression method in changing formal written phrases to oracy style. Students will be strengthened with high level of Putonghua proficiency to fulfil the language ability as required by different industries in China.

**Jour. 280 Governing Hong Kong**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an overview of governing Hong Kong. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the political institutions in Hong Kong with particular reference to the role of LegCo, ExCo and the Administration in the governance of Hong Kong as a SAR of China; critically analyse the dynamics of different political actors in Hong Kong and China, and the effects caused; provide a report on the current political issues in Hong Kong and in particular, on the issue of democratization of Hong Kong in the context of the culture of Hong Kong and the policies of China relating to Hong Kong; and provide a critical commentary on a topic assigned in class.
Jour. 300 News Editing  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of the course is to provide an introduction to news editing. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the theory of editorial skills in local news; demonstrate editorial tasks in designing news headlines and layout publishing; develop into attractive and quality news stories from news reporting drafts; integrate graphics, images, figures and tables into news stories; identify and evaluate news issues with respect to its news values from the editorial perspective; practice editing news reporting and writing in a regular manner through students’ news practicum, including SY Media Lab, Our Voice, Shuo Online, JC Radio; and reflect on practical editorial tasks to understand the fundamentals of journalistic ethics.

Jour. 301 Intermediate Audio-Visual Production  
Prere: Jour. 201  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to develop the theories and practical skills in audio-visual production at an intermediate level. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to identify the personal qualities and professional skills needed to work successfully in the constant changing media industry; demonstrate their technical competence and apply the basic concepts and rules of creativity by AV production projects; apply their analytical skills to the critical evaluation of visual productions; describe and evaluate the contemporary models of Lighting and Framing; show work constructively as a member of a production team; and discuss issues related to the content, the aesthetic elements, and the effectiveness of different kinds of visual
Jour. 303 English News Writing and Reporting

1 Term; 3 Credits

The goal of this course is to introduce English news writing and reporting. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the steps involved in news writing and reporting; collect information through research (using print and online databases) and interviews; recognize the elements of and be able to write hard news as well as feature articles; demonstrate news writing techniques to construct a story with concise grammar and style; recognize legal and ethical issues in news-gathering techniques; and apply news writing and reporting techniques to various genres: current affairs (politics and public administration, accidents, disasters and court reporting), news features (profiles and investigative reporting), public relations writing (press releases), etc.

Jour. 310 Storytelling

1 Term; 3 Credits

Storytelling is the most effective craft of communication that is mostly ignored in the daily routines of modern journalism. This course aims to provide students a “head start” in the competitive media environment with an emphasis on storytelling and the essential mindset of a successful storyteller. The themes are: How to find a good story? How to tell a story? How to make ideas stick? What constitutes a good story? On completion of the course, students will be able to generate ideas for storytelling; organize their ideas across various linear and non-linear platforms; and apply various forms,
structures, and techniques of storytelling to construct creative and effective stories.

**Jour. 311 Communication Research Methods**

Prere: *Jour. 200*  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to introduce the basic ideas of conducting mass communication research. There are two themes emphasized in the course: (1) skills in research evaluation and (2) techniques of conducting research. Course contents cover the following areas: the principles of research, approaches of research design, methods of data collection, various ways of analysis, interpretation of research data and major concerns of research ethics. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define the principles of doing empirical research for communication studies; distinguish between major research approaches and different qualitative as well as quantitative methods of data analysis and their applications in communications studies; judge the validity and reliability of research data; design a research and write a well-organized report; and apply research skills in journalistic and PR work.

**Jour. 312 Public Opinion Polls**

Prere: *Jour. 200 & Jour. 311*  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The goal of this course is to offer an introduction to public opinion polls. The course is basically divided into three parts. Firstly, concepts of public opinion will be examined. In this part, topics include theories of public opinion, relationship between public opinion and democracy and examination of criticisms toward public opinion. The second part is concerned about the research issues in opinion
polling, such as measurement of public opinion, sampling technique in polling, and methodologies used. Finally, it explores the applications of opinion polling. In this part, topics such as technology employed in public opinion polls, polling in Hong Kong and other countries, the relationship between polling and mass communication will be discussed. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to grasp the concepts of public opinion and theoretical debates concerned; conduct an opinion poll applying research concepts discussed in class; and evaluate the process of conducting a poll in real situation.

**Jour. 320 News Translation**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an introduction to the techniques and theories of news translation. Students will be exposed to local and international news of the print and electronic media and to a wide range of news subjects (government and politics, finance, crime and punishment, health and disasters, etc). To be competent in translation, students will be made aware of the constant changing nature of language, and the specific expressions in the news as well as the cultural and political contexts in which news writing is produced. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the steps and skills involved in news translation; define the criteria of good news translation; produce translated work relating to various news genres and subjects from Chinese into English and vice-versa demonstrating ability and confidence in sorting out linguistic/grammatical problems in news translation, and those arising from different political, social and cultural settings of the source-text.
Jour. 323 Mobile Journalism

1 Term; 3 Credits

Online journalism is an essential part of journalism in today’s fast changing media landscape. Traditional news media including newspapers and magazines, television and radio are using the Internet to disseminate information and attract audiences. In order to thrive in the profession, it is crucial for journalists to understand the new world of communications and grasp the expanding spectrum of possibilities for conveying news and information over the Internet. Therefore, this course aims to give students a solid foundation in the knowledge and practical skills necessary to thrive and succeed in 21st century media profession. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define mobile journalism and online communication; demonstrate the use of digital technologies to produce news stories, and the skills necessary to effectively harness new media for positive cultural influence; identify and analyse storytelling techniques and tools adopted by the news industry and to take advantage of the opportunities offered by digital technologies; and design a multimedia project, addressing both theory and practice, based on issues and areas of mobile and online journalism covered in the course.

Jour. 330 Radio News Reporting

1 Term; 3 Credits

This is an intermediary course for students who plan to seek a career in radio journalism. This course aims to provide students with basic and practical knowledge of radio news, and with fundamental
skills that are required in all applications. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to judge the “news value” of information concerning events and issues of the times for the listening public; describe steps to gather news and current affairs information according to the ethical guidelines as stipulated in the Code of Journalistic Practice of the Department; and demonstrate how to write and broadcast news and feature articles in accordance with the ethical guidelines as stipulated in the Code of Journalistic Practice of the Department.

**Jour. 340 TV News**

Prere: *Jour. 201*  
1 Term; 3 Credits

With emphasis on visual storytelling, this course aims to provide students with general principles and techniques of interviewing, writing, delivery and production of television news. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to produce news report stories on the basis of participation in the compulsory workshops organized for this course; define the general principles of research, interview and filming of public affairs features; evaluate and execute news scripts and TV news reports and features, and critically evaluate the internship experience and provide an assessment of its potential impact on future TV news careers.

**Jour. 350 Feature Writing**

Prere: *Jour. 221-2*  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to further enhance students’ interviewing and writing skills, to serve in the general news writing, and also
to offer an alternative but deeper form of news writing. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe feature writing in various styles, structure and categories; define a wider sense and perspective in in-depth news writing; critically develop one’s own excavations of news stories, through the clear intelligible and engaging text, attractive, touching and sentimental paragraphs; and suggest professional analysis and evaluation of contemporary feature articles in local newspapers and magazines.

Jour. 360 Magazine Writing and Editing
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to give students a thorough understanding of the structure of a magazine. Through in-depth analysis of the different parts of a magazine, students are introduced to the logic and techniques of magazine editing. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the process of communication through text and graphics; produce a high quality magazine feature through writing and editing; produce a semester study report with an analysis and commentary on various parts of a selected magazine and conduct a presentation summarizing the analysis.

Jour. 370 Mass Communication Law
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide basic knowledge of the law and the legal system in HK, with particular emphasis on aspects of law that affect mass communication. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the essence of law and the legal system in HK by group project and written assignment; apply basic legal
principles in tackling simple legal problems; and analyse critically the law affecting the profession of journalism.

**Jour. 371 Newspaper Practicum**  
**6 Terms; 3 Credits**

The practicum course lasting for six semesters presents another facet of the training programme for third-year students prior to their joining media organizations for summer internship. The course enables students to learn the basic skills in journalism including ethics in theory and practice, news reporting and writing, and newspaper and magazine editing. Students work under direct supervision of an instructor to learn the methodology to locate contents for publication; the form in which they appear; the design and layout for either on-line or print format. Students’ work will be refined by an editorial board of senior students. The University has fully utilized the Internet platform to publish students’ works on the web, and secured arrangements with local publications for students to participate in the production of stories and features for designated columns of the publications involved.

**Jour. 380 Business and Financial Reporting**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course is designed to introduce students to the basic concepts of business and financial reporting and writing. It also explores the economic and financial situations of Hong Kong and China, as well as other international markets. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the main features of the HK mar-
ketplace; translate business events and economic indicators into articles that readers find interesting, informative and helpful; interpret results announcements, financial statement, annual reports and other announcements of listed companies and report them in the form of accurate and interesting articles for their readers; apply investigative techniques for covering business news and specific beats; analyse and critically evaluate the code of ethics in Business Journalism. Business Journalism is not just about reporting, it is also about ethics. It involves integrity; the information gathering and dissemination, and editing may all contort the real situation and the truth.

**Jour. 390 Computer Animation in Journalism and Communication**

**Prere:** Jour. 201  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to introduce students without prior exposure to the animation field to the basic concepts of “What is animation and animated effect”. Students will learn basic knowledge and principles of animation before being taught the techniques and applications of visual effects in Digital Storytelling that facilitates Digital Journalism, Advertising, and TV Productions. This course also emphasizes the creative and critical thinking process in formulating the digital content, including professional ethics in the production process. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the process of Animation Production and analyse the implications of visual effect on branding; apply the basic principles of Animation in a final project; evaluate Animation as a medium in communication; demonstrate the techniques of 2D composition, the skill
of integrating with trailers and commercials; and analyse the current trends of digital visual effect production.

**Jour. 395 Social Media and Networked Communication**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The aims of this course are to offer an introduction to the potential of computer-mediated and online communication applications; provide students with the basic knowledge to the issues that involve in communication; enable students to participate and to develop an original, real-life news reporting project to demonstrate their understanding in the application of these communication tools; introduce students to the technical skills in the application of recent communication tools and social networking platforms, including Weblogs (e.g., Yahoo! Blog), Wiki (e.g., Wikipedia), Instant Messaging (e.g., MSN), Discussion Forums, RSS, Social Networking Platforms (e.g., Facebook, Twitter, etc.). Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define the broad issues in recent computer-mediated communications and online communications; demonstrate the basic production techniques to prepare content for online communication platforms; and analyse both the multimedia and interactive features and capabilities of real-life online communications from different perspectives.

**Jour. 400 Editorial and Commentary Writing**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course provides students with the fundamental knowledge and techniques of writing editorials and commentaries: to learn the common structure for editorials, how to generate ideas, how to
choose the appropriate way to write argument and conclusion, how to express the editorial policy through the entire process of editorial writing, and to understand the role of the editorial page. Students are also expected to participate in discussions of assigned readings or issues of the day and make informal reports on editorials they have read. At the same time, they will get experience in writing various types of commentaries.

**Jour. 403 Professional Internship**  
**Summer; 3 Credits**

Students who have successfully completed 94 credit-units are required to move on to another round of practical training through summer internships at local and overseas newspapers, TV and radio stations, news agencies, the Government Information Services Department, public relations companies and advertising firms. The Department lays great emphasis on the media organizations' evaluation of students' performance during the internship training, which forms a significant part of the Department's overall assessment of a student's performance in this course.

**Jour. 410 Media Ethics**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**

In our democracy, media professionals have the freedom to write and report almost anything. However, with that freedom comes an enormous responsibility - not to mention an economic imperative - to act in a fair, responsible manner. And the idea of media ethics in the profession only has grown as the power and influence of both traditional and digital media has increased. This course does not
attempt to provide definitive answers to each and every ethical quandary. In many cases, in fact, there may be many "right" answers, or perhaps none that seem satisfactory. Instead, what we will attempt is to provide a framework that will enable students as working media professionals to a.) identify an ethical dilemma, and b.) have a framework to analyse the situation, develop options and select a solution. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to demonstrate awareness of deeply held beliefs in the Codes of Media Ethics and how those beliefs affect the decisions; critically analyse life experiences and media field cases in ethical dilemmas; and recognize, analyse and resolve real-world ethical cases using diverse decision making approaches.

Jour. 420 Press Policy and Law of China

1 Term; 3 Credits

By taking this course, students shall be able to understand the major standards of the current legal system and policies by which the Chinese press and media have to abide, to compare the Chinese standards of practice to the basic principles of international media law, and to interpret and follow these standards in their future careers in Mainland China. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the basic concepts: legal, policy, Press Law (Media Law), freedom of expression, freedom of the press, China's social system and the media; define the basic characteristics of the system, as the "two systems" belong to two different legal systems under both Hong Kong and news systems in different countries; in public law context, evaluate China's "Citizens have freedom of the media owned by the state", "party control the media" news system,
information release system, security system, media management system and foreign reporters interview system in order to differentiate the cross-border differences; and at the personal level, critically analyse and compare China with Hong Kong on the protection of reputation, privacy and other personal rights law, and copyright law.

**Jour. 431 Script Writing**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an introduction of the creative processes of script writing, focusing on the art, craft, and business of film and television script writing. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define the concepts of drama and film narrative; describe the steps to develop creative ideas; demonstrate the capacity of creative writing by a script project; describe specific writing techniques through discussion and writing exercises; evaluate how to communicate effectively through writing skills; and critically analyse a professional TV or film script.

**Jour. 440 Entertainment and Pop Culture**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to introduce to students the relationship and basic concepts of Entertainment and Pop Culture, and the role of media. It also provides students with an opportunity for developing their career in the field of entertainment industry. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define basic concepts in the main area of Entertainment and Pop Culture; employ pop songs, MVs, TV show, and film clips and other media forms to
demonstrate how abstract concepts can be applied to empirical material and how theoretical analysis can be useful in meaning making; and demonstrate how to implement production and writing of Entertainment and Pop Culture.

Jour. 441-2 Honours Project (Dissertation)

2 Terms; 6 Credits

The course aims to provide final year students the chance to take Directed Research in Communications Studies. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to propose a research topic that may include current issues relating to journalism and mass communication or theoretical analysis and critical evaluation of theories of communication studies; apply the knowledge and skills they have acquired during the programme to conduct and complete a piece of research; and present to the Department their final product in a research report format which may incorporate empirical research data or theoretical discussion of the subject matter.

Jour. 450 Honours Project (In-Depth Reporting / Video Production)

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to offer students the chance to conduct a project of their chosen type of media production, including written text, photography, and video production. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to conduct and complete a substantial and sustained piece of journalism, which can take the form of an in-depth reporting such as an investigative story, a feature, a photo essay, or some other comparable journalistic works; or in form of a video-tape
of one of a range of programmes, which may include TV news production, variety show, documentary film, drama, etc; prepare the work up to the quality for publication; and indicate the quality of planning and the production skills of the final product.

**Jour. 460 Digitization and Interactive Multimedia**

*1 Term; 3 Credits*

The aims of this course are to offer an introductory course to the understanding of the applications of computer to the structure and organization of multimedia and interactive website development projects, with respect to ethical issues in the production process; provide students with the basic knowledge to the design issues that explain the components and processes; explore the ways to produce and to complete the design of multimedia and interactive websites; enable students to participate in original and real-life production projects; and introduce students to the technical skills in the application of Adobe Web Premium Suite, including Dreamweaver, Flash, Fireworks, etc. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define the broad issues in multimedia and interactive website design; demonstrate basic production techniques to prepare original real-life multimedia and interactive website projects; and analyse contemporary design work from different perspectives.
Jour. 470 In-Depth and Investigative Reporting  
Prere: Jour. 221-2  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with essential journalistic skills and the rigorous, in-depth and advanced research and investigation skills required to produce original, exclusive and revelatory stories. Investigative journalism is one of the most demanding areas of journalism, but also one with a growing body of specialist techniques and practitioners. Students will learn from case studies of complex and high profile investigations and acquire techniques of investigative reporting, such that they can plan, research and write an investigative feature of public concern or in the public interest. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define the essential steps for a job in print or broadcast journalism, with innovative and in-depth research and investigation techniques; complete a real-life investigation aimed for publication or broadcast using computer-assisted reporting, public records and databases, and undercover and covert investigation techniques.

Jour. 480 China Reporting  
1 Term; 3 Credits

Hong Kong media’s post-1997 coverage on Mainland China has seen a growing trend. This course, by analysing current China news (both Mainland China & Taiwan affairs) coverage in Hong Kong, and by applying relevant media theories, aims to enhance students' understanding of the "China Beat" operations in Hong Kong under the "one country, two systems", as well as the interactions between Hong Kong media and their counterparts in Mainland China. The course will also teach students China news reporting
strategies and skills, so that students will have a thorough understanding of the basic methodology for reporting China news, as well as related PRC laws and regulations. This course therefore will not only benefit students who aspire to learn the craft of journalism, but also provide students with practical know-hows on how to comprehend China affairs better. This is vital for their future career development in the field of journalism.

**Jour. 490 Documentary and Public Affairs Programmes**

*Prere: Jour. 340*  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to develop an overview of documentary and public affairs programme production. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to demonstrate how to observe, to focus, to make sound judgment and to analyse critically as a critical thinker through class discussions and presentations; apply journalistic ethics and principles from concepts to practices as a responsible media professional by a documentary production; come across as a good, convincing, sharp and specific storyteller by a documentary production; demonstrate how to enhance better understanding between government and community, majority and minority, and privileged and underprivileged as a devoted communicator by producing various projects; and define the role of a producer in the broadcasting field, and pave their way for a career in news, public affairs as well as documentary production.

**PRA. 130 Principles of Advertising and Marketing**  
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course aims to give an overview of principles of advertising and marketing. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define the modern marketing and advertising industry including the dynamics of consumer behaviour at an introductory level; distinguish between the usage of different media in achieving different effects in advertising at an introductory level; apply basic concepts on usage of ‘sign’ and production techniques particularly for print and electronic media; communicate and present information effectively in written and electronic formats in a collaborative and virtual environment in a global context as a member of a team at an introductory level; evaluate contemporary advertisements in Hong Kong; give an effective project presentation demonstrating confidence and creativity; and organize and construct an advertisement in print and electronic media format with clear objectives and target audience analysis.

PRA. 200 Public Relations and the Media
Prere: PRA. 130

This course aims to provide students with a general overview of the basic functionality of public relations and the media as two separate entities and examine the relations in between. It is intended to move usefully beyond the introductory level and is suitable for students who either want to choose PR or journalist as their future career. Upon completion of this course, students will be able to describe the work of public relations and the media in a professional and efficient way; describe how the media and the public relations work together; and plan and execute a media event demonstrating the skills and techniques necessary to be a media-focused public
relations practitioner.

**PRA. 310 Advertising Copywriting**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to cultivate the creativity of students in various kinds of advertisement and sharpen their copywriting skills, so as to prepare them to be a copywriter. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to show confidence in copywriting by completing quality copywriting tasks; define copywriting for advertising; demonstrate competence of writing skills in various forms of copywriting, including advertising copy, TV/Radio script and on-line advertising; critically analyse contemporary copywriting work, especially their creativity component; and evaluate the professional ethics of advertising.

**PRA. 320 Public Relations Disciplines**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an overview of public relations as an important means of communication in modern society. The course outlines the unique features of the communication process in public relations and equips students for a future career in the public relations industry. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define the different disciplines in public relations; and demonstrate the skills and techniques of a public relations practitioner by organizing a simple PR event for promotion.

**PRA. 330 Advertising Strategies and Design**

Prere: PRA. 130

1 Term; 3 Credits

The goal of this course is to introduce students to the theories
of media audiences and media consumption/interaction which will improve students’ ability to critically engage and communicate theoretical ideas, both in writing and in speech. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define the modern advertising industry including the dynamics of consumer behaviour; distinguish the usage of different media in achieving different effects in advertising; apply advanced concepts on usage of ‘sign’ and demonstrate production techniques particularly for print and electronic media; work productively as part of a team, and in particular, communicate and present information effectively in written and electronic formats in a collaborative and virtual environment with a global context; critically analyse contemporary advertisements; demonstrate logical presentation of material and confidence in responding to questions arising there from a project presentation; and organize and construct an advertisement in print and electronic media format with clear objectives and target audience analysis.

PRA. 340 Event Management

1 Term; 3 Credits

Event Management is a specialized and growing sector in the PR and Marketing industry. Professional PR practitioners are always called upon to develop, plan and organize various events with the objective of promoting a company’s corporate image, its products or services, fund-raising, or building connections with its potential customers and even employees. The aim of the course is, therefore, to develop an overall view of the PR event management process and management technique. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe concept development in PR event
management; evaluate the key concerns in the process of managing PR events; construct concept and full planning for PR events; apply management technique necessary for managing and evaluating PR events; and identify and solve problems that may arise in PR event management.

PRA. 350 Public Relations Writing

1 Term; 3 Credits

All public relations practitioners are required to write. Good writing skill is essential to ensure that key messages can be conveyed to the public (target audiences) accurately and effectively. The aims of this course are to: introduce to students the importance of writing for public relations practitioners; enable students to appreciate various kinds of writings for public relations ("PR writings"); provide students with the knowledge and techniques of writing for public relations; and offer opportunities to students for practicing PR writings. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to define writing for public relations; analyse critically PR writings on their effectiveness; demonstrate the skills and techniques necessary to write for public relations through written exercises and assignments; and demonstrate how to write effectively and appropriately for different occasions in public relations by self-selected group projects.

PRA. 420 Integrated Marketing Strategies and Planning

Prere: PRA. 330

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students a broad and comprehensive understanding of the marketing communication disciplines; emphasis will be placed on the use of advertising, media and public
relations as tools to influence target audience’s attitudes and behaviours. Upon completion of the course, students will be to integrate concepts of marketing, advertising and public relations and other marketing tools as a whole; and prepare marketing plans for different types of organizations using basic principles of marketing.

**PRA. 430 Audio-Visual Production in PRA**
Prere: Jour. 201  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an in-depth knowledge and hands-on training in the production of commercial AV programmes and offer participants the skills and confidence to apply basic skills in the multi-media age environment. Course design imitate the industry’s reality – e.g. severe competition, full of variables and improvisation, unforgiving, no absolute fairness, human interaction, quick decision and action. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe all related aspects in commercial AV production; demonstrate commercial AV production knowledge and skills through a screening report, individual and group projects; identify initiatives to research and discovery by critically analysing contemporary production work; and prepare, psychologically and practically, for the professional industry with severe competition by critically evaluating good and bad productions in the market.

**PRA. 440 Advertising Agency Account Planning**
Prere: PRA. 320  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with knowledge of the operation of an advertising agency. It incorporates segments of
brand management, creativity, market research, consumer behaviour and critical thinking in the learning process. The course prepares students for the role of account servicing and planning professional, as well as outlines the career potential in other related fields, such as marketing. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to evaluate the consumer from every possible perspective that they might have to deal with in their future careers; construct an individual advertising plan; plan for consumer response in different forms of advertising; show a job-ready understanding of the expectation of clients and colleagues in an agency; and define professional qualities in working effectively in an advertising agency.

**PRA. 450 Crisis Management**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of the course is to equip students with the basic understanding of a crisis situation and to provide them with the most effective analytical skills, both quantitatively and qualitatively. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to identify the difference between an issue and a crisis and how best to tackle them; demonstrate technical competence in crisis management by in-class presentations; apply basic PR concepts and communications skills in resolving issues and crises by reviewing literature cases; apply analytical skills to critical evaluation of situations, issues and crises by reviewing literature cases; demonstrate how to refine a particular crisis management plan assigned and have it improved by article review and presentation; analyse the qualities required to work constructively as a member of a crisis management team by article review and presentation; draw up a crisis management plan
applying the theories, principles learned; and organize and present effectively on the afore-mentioned plan.

**PRA. 460 Media Planning**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The objective of the course is to equip students with the basic concepts and knowledge of media planning, and how it operates in the local media scene and real life business situations. Students after taking the course will gain a solid foundation for future career development in advertising agencies, media agencies, PR and other marketing discipline. The course also covers updated real case studies, and students will learn the principles and procedures of media planning through in-class discussion, group projects and a final individual project. Upon completion of the course, students will be able to describe the current practice of media planning in Hong Kong, Mainland China and the world; identify the professional qualities for future career development in relevant marketing industries; and demonstrate the basic media planning skills through group projects and a final individual project.

*Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of Journalism and Communication, please refer to their respective Departments for details.*
Department of Law and Business

Underpinning the Bachelor of Commerce (Hons.) in Law and Business is the premise that increasingly business activity is subject to legal regulation, both domestic and international. The international dimension is increasingly important, given the growth of Hong Kong as an international business and financial centre and the emerging role of China in the world economy.

In that regulated environment, the interface between law and business is of increasing importance, so that graduates with an understanding of both business and legal principles will be able to make a significant contribution to efficient and effective business operations.

Against that background, the Bachelor of Commerce (Hons.) in Law and Business develops an understanding of core business and legal principles and at the same time develops critical and analytical skills, so that graduates can operate effectively in an ever-changing domestic and international business environment.

The Bachelor of Commerce (Hons.) in Law and Business was successfully launched in September 2007. Graduates of the degree programme need to have successfully completed a minimum of 124 credits, consisting of required and elective courses. The course lists for the four years of the honours degree programme appear below:
Bachelor of Commerce (Hons.) in Law and Business

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### First Year (Total number of credits required: 34)

#### Language Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 101-2</td>
<td>First Year Chinese</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 131-2</td>
<td>Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates) #</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 111-2</td>
<td>English Usage</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Exemption is allowed from Chi. 131-2 based on an exemption test held in late August.

#### Departmental Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 120</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Management</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Economics</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 100</td>
<td>Legal Research and Writing</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 101</td>
<td>Legal Process</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 201</td>
<td>Contracts I</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 202</td>
<td>Contracts II</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Additional Requirement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Law 191-2</td>
<td>Legal Literacy I &amp; II</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Total number of credits for First Year courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Language Requirements</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Departmental Requirements</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Second Year (Total number of credits required: 30)

### Language Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 251-2</td>
<td>Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 211-2</td>
<td>English Writing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Departmental Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct. 100</td>
<td>Financial Accounting</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 130</td>
<td>Principles of Marketing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 200</td>
<td>Constitutional Law</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 301</td>
<td>Torts I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 150</td>
<td>Critical Thinking</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional Requirement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Law 290</td>
<td>Legal Literacy III: Writing Solutions to Legal Problems</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Electives (choose 6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 100</td>
<td>General Chinese History</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 180</td>
<td>Introduction to the Study of the PRC</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 121</td>
<td>International Relations and Organizations</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 211</td>
<td>Law in Context (UNE, Online Course)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 315</td>
<td>Commercial Law</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 317</td>
<td>Australian Constitutional Law (UNE, Online Course)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 411</td>
<td>Torts II</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.E. 103</td>
<td>Physical Education</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.E. 104</td>
<td>Physical Education</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 100</td>
<td>Introductory Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 103</td>
<td>Introduction to Anthropology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 107</td>
<td>Understanding Sociology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 208</td>
<td>Hong Kong Society and Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Total number of credits for Second Year courses
Language Requirements: 8
Departmental Requirements: 16
Electives: 6
Total: 30

Third Year (Total number of credits required: 30)

Departmental Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 220</td>
<td>Quantitative Methods for Business</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 250</td>
<td>Organizational Behaviour</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 243</td>
<td>Money and Banking</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 300</td>
<td>Chinese Legal System</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 302</td>
<td>Equity</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 303</td>
<td>Criminal Law I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Electives (choose 12 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 230</td>
<td>Consumer Behaviour</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 308</td>
<td>Financial Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 309</td>
<td>Human Resource Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 310</td>
<td>Estate and Retirement Planning</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 330</td>
<td>China Marketing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 405</td>
<td>Tax Planning</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 406</td>
<td>Insurance</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 408</td>
<td>Asia Pacific Management Issues</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 233</td>
<td>The Economy of Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 323</td>
<td>The Economy of Contemporary China</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fin. 444</td>
<td>Financial Institutions in Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 240</td>
<td>History of Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 320</td>
<td>The Contemporary World</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 370</td>
<td>The Developmental Experience of Modern Western Economic Powers: Study of Selected Cases</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hist. 470  Sino-US Relations ..................................................... 3 -
Law 310\(^1\)  Finance Law .................................................. 3 -
Law 311\(^1\)  Trusts ......................................................... 3 -
Law 313  Administrative Law ............................................... 3 -
Law 314  Commercial Dispute Resolution ................................ 3 -
Law 316  Corporate Criminal Law ........................................ 3 -
Law 319  Criminal Law II .................................................. 3 -
Law 320  Corporate Secretaryship ......................................... 3 -
Law 321  Hong Kong Taxation ............................................. 3 -
Law 412  Civil Procedure ................................................... 3 -
Law 415\(^1\)  Public International Law ...................................... 3 -
Law 416  Private International Law ....................................... 3 -
Law 417\(^1\)  PRC Law of Family and Succession ..................... 3 -
Law 418\(^1\)  Chinese Commercial Law ................................... 3 -
Law 419\(^2\)  Chinese Legal History ...................................... 3 -
Law 420  Criminal Procedure ............................................. 3 -
Law 421  Australian Corporations Law (UNE, Online Course) ... 3 -

**AND:** All Electives listed under Second Year except Hist. 100, Jour. 121, Soc. 103, Soc. 107 and Soc. 208

\(^1\) Not offered in 2013/14

**Total number of credits for Third Year courses**

Departmental Requirements: 18
Electives: 12
Total: 30

**Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 30)**

**Departmental Requirements**

Bus. 418  Contemporary Issues in Corporate Governance ....... 3 -
Bus. 420  Advanced Business Report Writing & Communication... 3 -
Bus. 460  Business Strategy .................................................. 3 -
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Law 400</td>
<td>Property Law I</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 401</td>
<td>Company Law</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 402</td>
<td>Banking Law</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Electives (choose 12 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Law 318</td>
<td>Jurisprudence (UNE, Online Course)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 410</td>
<td>Research Project</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 413</td>
<td>Property Law II</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 414</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 422</td>
<td>Advanced Research, Writing and Advocacy (UNE, Online Course)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*AND: All Electives listed under Second and Third Years except Hist. 100, Jour. 121, Soc. 103, Soc. 107 and Soc. 208*

**Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses**

- Departmental Requirements: **18**
- Electives: **12**
- Total: **30**

**Elective Concentrations**

Students may take some elective courses from across all of the University disciplines, though at least 18 credits must be law and business courses. Students wishing to undertake some specialisation may complete one or two of the elective concentrations, below. They may also take a mix of electives from across two or more of the concentrations.

**Financial Service Concentration**

- Bus. 310  Estate and Retirement Planning
- Bus. 405  Tax Planning
- Bus. 406  Insurance
Fin. 444 Financial Institutions in Hong Kong
Law 310¹ Finance Law
Law 410 Research Project

Corporate Governance and Management Concentration
Bus. 308 Financial Management
Bus. 309 Human Resource Management
Law 310¹ Finance Law
Law 320 Corporate Secretaryship
Law 321 Hong Kong Taxation
Law 410 Research Project

China Business Concentration
Bus. 330 China Marketing
Bus. 408 Asia Pacific Management Issues
Econ. 233 The Economy of Hong Kong
Econ. 323 The Economy of Contemporary China
Law 410 Research Project
Law 418¹ Chinese Commercial Law

Commercial Law Concentration
Law 310¹ Finance Law
Law 313 Administrative Law
Law 314 Commercial Dispute Resolution
Law 315 Commercial Law
Law 316 Corporate Criminal Law
Law 410 Research Project

Law Professional Concentration
Law 311¹ Trusts
Law 411 Torts II
Law 412  Civil Procedure
Law 413  Property Law II
Law 414  Evidence
Law 420  Criminal Procedure

**Chinese and International Law Concentration**

- Law 415\(^1\)  Public International Law
- Law 416  Private International Law
- Law 417\(^1\)  PRC Law of Family and Succession
- Law 418\(^1\)  Chinese Commercial Law
- Law 419\(^1\)  Chinese Legal History

**Australian Law Concentration**

- Law 211  Law in Context
- Law 317  Australian Constitutional Law
- Law 318  Jurisprudence
- Law 421  Australian Corporations Law
- Law 422  Advanced Research, Writing and Advocacy

\(^1\) Not offered in 2013/14
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(BComm DEGREE PROGRAMME)

Law 100 Legal Research and Writing
1 Term; 3 Credits

Through primary reliance on practical workshops, the course aims to provide an understanding of the research and writing methodologies particularly applicable to the discipline of law. The course also aims to equip students with a sound knowledge of available materials, with a particular emphasis on online materials, and a capacity to make effective and ethical use of those materials. The course further aims to develop oral communication skills.

Law 101 Legal Process
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an understanding of the legal system, sources of law and the legal processes of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region. By providing a broad understanding of other legal systems throughout the world, the course also aims to equip students with a capacity to critically evaluate their own legal system. The course further aims to provide students with an understanding of the potential impact of law and legal processes on the business environment.

Law 191-2 Legal Literacy I & II
2 Terms; Non-Credit Bearing

This is a two-semester course, of 3 hours per week, introducing students to legal English usage, legal reasoning, and reading legal
cases, ordinances and contracts. The course teaches the vocabu-
lary and grammar relevant to articulating legal argument. The oral
skills of debate, presentation and mooting are addressed in depth.
The course concludes with a series of sessions on the language of
mooting, and how to present a focused and persuasive argument to
the bench for their Year 1 Contract Moot. Each semester ends with
a test of students’ legal English usage.

Law 200 Constitutional Law

1 Term; 4 Credits

The course aims to provide an understanding of the historical
and conceptual principles of constitutional law and of the Hong Kong
constitutional system. The first part of the course aims to provide an
understanding of constitutional concepts such as the rule of law, re-
sponsible government, separation of powers, judicial review, and
human rights protection. The second part of the course aims to pro-
vide an understanding of the Hong Kong Basic Law. Faced with dis-
cordant arguments and divergent opinions on its application, the aim
is to provide an understanding of its legislative intent and corre-
sponding jurisprudence.

Law 201 Contracts I

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of
the principles relating to the formation of contracts and problems
underlying the development of free agreement, and, coupled with
the course Contracts II, aims to lay the foundation for the study of
other relevant commercial topics in the programme. The course also
The course aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of the principles relating to the interpretation of contracts and contractual remedies, and, coupled with the course *Contracts I*, aims to lay the foundation for the study of other relevant commercial topics in the programme. The course also aims to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the relevant principles and to apply those principles to the resolution of practical problems.

**Law 211 Law in Context**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This unit is concerned with orientating students into the discipline of law by providing an overview of the historical, jurisprudential, commercial, cultural and global context in which Australian law operates today. Trends and influences shaping the future of Australian law and practice are also explored. Research skills relating to secondary materials are developed together with a capacity to discuss abstract legal questions through writing an academic essay. This unit provides an awareness of the opportunities for further deepening knowledge of the discipline together with a foundation for more specialised and advanced legal studies which follow.
Law 290 Legal Literacy III: Writing Solutions to Legal Problems  
1 Term; Non-Credit Bearing

The Legal writing course is a 1st semester course in Year 2. It focuses on preparing student to produce written answers to Legal Problem Questions. It is scheduled to run parallel with the Tort I course, and its target is to help students write an exam answer to a problem question in their tort exam. It follows a cyclical syllabus, taking students through three tort problems from the problem analysis to the final revision and proofreading of their final draft, and includes peer evaluation at each stage. The course concludes with a final test featuring a legal problem question.

Law 300 Chinese Legal System  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an overview of the Chinese legal system and of the social, political and economic forces that shape the law in the PRC. The course also aims to develop a capacity to critically examine the laws and legal system in PRC.

Law 301 Torts I  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide a comprehensive introduction to the essential principles in tort of negligence, and to enhance students’ ability to identify, analyse and apply the relevant principles in finding probable answers to legal questions in tort of negligence. Certain other areas of tortious liability are considered in the elective course Torts II.
Law 302 Equity

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide an understanding of the nature of equity and equitable rights and interests and to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the relevant principles and to apply those principles to the resolution of practical problems.

Law 303 Criminal Law I

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide an understanding of criminal responsibility, the classification of crimes, and a number of significant criminal offences. The course also aims to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the relevant principles and to apply those principles to the resolution of practical problems. This area of the law is further developed in the elective courses Corporate Criminal Law and Criminal Procedure.

Law 310 Finance Law

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an understanding of the law underlying financial transactions and the laws regulating instruments of finance and to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the various types of financial transactions and to apply those principles to hypothetical scenarios.

Law 311 Trusts

1 Term; 3 Credits
The course aims to provide an understanding of the fundamen-
tal principles of the law of trusts and to develop a capacity to critically
evaluate the relevant principles and to apply those principles to hy-
pothetical scenarios.

Law 313 Administrative Law  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of this course is to impart an understanding of the 
fundamentals of administrative law and judicial review through the 
study of key concepts and institutions of, inter alia, constitutional-
ism, the rule of law, separation of powers, responsible and repre-
sentative Government and public bodies (including and not limited 
to the Legislature, the Executive and the Judiciary). The course will 
cover the study of various grounds of judicial review (including the 
merits review) of administrative decisions of public bodies.

Law 314 Commercial Dispute Resolution  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide an understanding of the various 
forms of commercial dispute resolution, from both a theoretical and 
practical perspective, and to critically examine the operation and ef-
fectiveness of those mechanisms for the resolution of commercial 
disputes. The course also aims to provide students with practical 
experience in mediating disputes.

Law 315 Commercial Law  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide an understanding of a range of
principles of commercial law, including those pertaining to personal property, the sale of goods, agency, consumer credit and protection, and insurance, and to develop students’ capacity to critically evaluate the various laws and to apply the relevant principles to hypothetical scenarios.

**Law 316 Corporate Criminal Law**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide an understanding of the substantive and procedural aspects of corporate criminal liability and to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the relevant principles and to apply those principles to hypothetical scenarios. Fundamental principles of criminal responsibility and common substantive offences are considered in the course *Criminal Law*.

**Law 317 Australian Constitutional Law**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This unit is directed to the study of the theory and practice of the law of government in Australia. The study will centre on the Commonwealth Constitution. Most of the unit is taken up in studying the powers and working of the three principal branches of the Commonwealth government—the Executive, Legislature and the Judiciary. Individual items of the legislative power of the Commonwealth Parliament are studied in detail. The implications of Australian federalism, including inconsistency of laws and inter-governmental immunities are examined. Issues of individual rights and the extent of their protection under the Commonwealth Constitution are considered in the last part of this unit.
Law 318 Jurisprudence  

1 Term; 3 Credits

The unit introduces students to some significant theories about justice and law. Classical theories of law in the form of natural law and positivism are considered, but the main emphasis is on twentieth-century theories discussing our moral duties in general, the relationship between legal and moral reasoning, and the legitimacy of judicial activism. Liberal theorists discussed include H L A Hart, Ronald Dworkin and Jeremy Waldron. There is also consideration of theorists who are critical of liberalism.

The aim is to stimulate students to be sensitive to ethical choices that are presented by law. Exposure to arguments conducted in a discourse other than the legal discourse that law students are mostly exposed to in their degree should sharpen analytical and written communication skills.

Law 319 Criminal Law II

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide an understanding of particular criminal offences which are common in Hong Kong, including theft related offences, deception, blackmail, criminal intimidation, offences against properties, domestic violence, Triad offences, sexual offences, public order offences, drug offences, vice activities and public security offences (BL 23 offences). The course also aims to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the relevant principles and to apply those principles to the resolution of practical problems.
Law 320 Corporate Secretaryship

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to develop an understanding of the skills involved in taking overall responsibility for the corporate secretarial function in small, medium and large scale organizations, and listed companies. The practice of corporate secretaryship in this course extends to both the strategic and functional contexts in advising the Board and leading teams in secretarial best practice (whilst ensuring compliance with laws and regulations of Hong Kong, particularly: the Companies Ordinance, the Hong Kong Listing Rules, the Securities and Futures Ordinance and the Hong Kong Codes on Takeovers and Mergers and Share Repurchases) and in establishing efficient internal communication of Board’s decisions and external reporting. A further aim of this course is to develop analytical skills which will enable students to apply the law to solve basic legal problems that may arise in Hong Kong.

Law 321 Hong Kong Taxation

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to develop an understanding of the features of taxation and the current law relating to taxation in Hong Kong. Particular emphasis is placed upon the administration of taxation in Hong Kong including the issue of tax returns and assessment, payment and recovery of tax, penalties, procedures for objections and appeals. This course will also develop a practical application of Hong Kong taxation law to corporate entities, partnerships and individuals. A further aim of this course is to develop analytical skills
which will enable students to apply the law to solve basic legal problems that may arise in Hong Kong. Additionally, this course will focus on current legal issues facing taxation in Hong Kong.

Law 400 Property Law I

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to equip students with the ability to critically examine and to apply basic legal principles to hypothetical cases and scenarios through a comprehensive review of the basic principles of the real and personal property law.

Law 401 Company Law

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of the legal framework governing business organisations in Hong Kong with a particular focus on the registered company. This course aims to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the relevant concepts and to apply those principles to hypothetical scenarios. The Company Law course also aims to promote independent learning through guided discovery and teacher-supported research tasks.

Law 402 Banking Law

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an understanding of banking law, including the law relating to banking transactions and the legal framework within which the banking system operates in Hong Kong. The course also aims to develop analytical skills to enable students to apply the law to solve basic legal problems which may arise in
Hong Kong. Additionally, this course will focus on current legal issues facing the banking industry and other financial service providers in Hong Kong.

**Law 410 Research Project**

_1 Term; 3 Credits_

This course aims to provide an opportunity for sustained, independent research into an area at the interface of law and business and to further develop research, analytical and writing skills.

**Law 411 Torts II**

_1 Term; 3 Credits_

The course aims to provide an advanced study of issues in the law of Torts, building on the course *Law 301 Torts I*, and to further develop a capacity to critically evaluate the relevant principles and to apply those principles to hypothetical scenarios. Distinct areas of tortious liability are considered in the core course *Torts I*.

**Law 412 Civil Procedure**

_1 Term; 3 Credits_

The course aims to provide a comprehensive understanding of the nature and effect of the steps taken in civil proceedings, from the time of initiation of legal processes to the end of all court and related proceedings and to develop a capacity for the drafting of relevant documents. The course also aims to develop a capacity to critically analyse the processes for the resolution of civil disputes and the impact of those processes on the business environment.
Law 413 Property Law II  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide a general knowledge of aspects of property law and practical knowledge of conveyancing, as well as local law on land in the New Territories. The course also aims to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the relevant principles and to apply those principles to the resolution of practical problems.

Law 414 Evidence  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an understanding of the law of evidence and to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the evidential rules and their suitability for the resolution of disputes in the business environment. The course also aims to develop a capacity to apply the rules of evidence to hypothetical scenarios.

Law 415 Public International Law  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an understanding of the principles and role of public international law and to develop a general understanding of the various branches of international law.

Law 416 Private International Law  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an understanding of the principles of private international law applicable in China, including in relation to contracts, torts, and family law.
Law 417 PRC Law of Family and Succession  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide an understanding of the marriage law, laws protecting legitimate interests and rights of women and children, and the law of succession in China. By providing an insight on the development of family and succession law, the course also aims to equip students with an understanding of its impact on Chinese society. The course further aims to develop a capacity to critically examine the relevant legal principles and to apply those principles to the resolution of practical problems.

Law 418 Chinese Commercial Law  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an understanding of a range of principles of Chinese commercial law and to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the various laws and to apply the relevant principles to hypothetical scenarios.

Law 419 Chinese Legal History  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide an understanding of the origin, development, and underlying theories of the Chinese legal system. By providing an understanding of democratic principles and the philosophical foundation of Chinese Law, the course aims also to equip students with the capability to critically evaluate the rule of law within a Chinese cultural context.
Law 420 Criminal Procedure

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide an understanding of Hong Kong criminal procedures, including police powers, the commencement of proceedings, bail, charges, processes before and at trial and sentencing, and to develop a capacity to critically evaluate the various laws and to apply the relevant principles to hypothetical scenarios.

Law 421 Australian Corporations Law

1 Term; 3 Credits

This unit consists of a study of the legal principles applicable to companies and other main forms of business associations in Australia. The principal focus of the unit is, however, on the analysis of relevant provisions of the Corporations Act 2001 (Cth) and the study of relevant case law in order to give students a sound understanding of the fundamental principles of corporate law. Topics include analysis of partnership law, agency law, corporate personality, company incorporation and its consequences, the company’s constitution, the financing of companies, corporate governance rules for management of companies, duties and liabilities of directors and officers, shareholders’ meetings, the principle of the majority rule and the minority protection, members’ rights and remedies, financial reporting and audit requirements, takeovers and regulation of securities and financial services, companies in distress and the winding up of companies.

Law 422 Advanced Research, Writing and Advocacy

1 Term; 3 Credits
This unit seeks to impress upon students the importance of being effective communicators both in writing and orally. First, the unit aims to improve students' legal research skills in using the law library and in particular the electronic law library. Next, the ability to write clearly and concisely are skills which need to be mastered if students are to succeed as lawyers. Here students will be asked to prepare or review several pieces of legal writing using plain language. Finally, students will be given the opportunity to show their research skills by writing submissions and speaking to them in a moot.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(SERVICE COURSES)

Law 110 Introduction to Law
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course is designed to help students to acquire a foundation in legal studies and an understanding of the legal system of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region. Many countries have a common law heritage and this course enables students to gain an insight into the key features, core values and institutions of the common law system.

Law 250 Business Law
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with a broad understanding of the fundamental principles of business law in Hong Kong, with particular emphasis on contract law, and the legal environment within which it operates.

Law 331-2 Company Law
2 Terms; 6 Credits

The course aims to provide students with a comprehensive knowledge of the fundamental principles of Company Law, as well as acquainting them with the growing body of case law intended primarily for shareholder protection. While the course will place emphasis on principles of common law and equity, on which a large part of Company Law is still based, the course also provides detailed analyses of the provisions of the Hong Kong Companies Ordinance,
so that students can apply the law to practical situations.

*Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of Law and Business, please refer to their respective Departments for details.*
Mission and Goals

The mission of the BSW (Hons.) programme is to develop competent social work professionals who are able to practise in a wide range of service settings. It aims to enable students to become generalist social workers who are: (i) equipped with a person-in-environment perspective; (ii) able to understand human diversity and at-risk targets, and develop skills to address social needs; and (iii) committed to the objectives, values and ethics of the social work profession; multi-level approaches in problem-solving; and the continuous development of the professional self.

Features

1. The 4-year full-time honours degree programme gives students a first qualification in social work. A generalist approach is adopted to equip students with theories, knowledge and skills in social work.

2. Students are offered 3 supervised fieldwork placements, which is unique in current social work training in the territory. For pre-placement exposure, Year 2 students are required to undertake 100-hours of voluntary service in social service organizations.

3. Courses on social work research methods, programme evaluation and quality management are offered to enable students to develop competency in research and programme evaluation.
4. In the final year, students are required to complete an Honours Project to assimilate what they have learnt for the development of their professional niche.

To graduate from the degree programme, students are required to complete a minimum of 137 credits consisting of required and elective courses. Graduates are eligible to apply for registration as Registered Social Worker (RSW) with the Hong Kong Social Workers Registration Board. To promote quality assurance and to foster a culture of quality in teaching and learning, the Department has established a Quality Assurance System to ensure and enhance the quality of the programme.

The courses offered to students in 2013/14 and the structure of the BSW (Hons.) programme appear as follows:

**Bachelor of Social Work (Hons.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**First Year (Total number of credits required: 35-38)**

**Language Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 101-2</td>
<td>First Year Chinese</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 131-2</td>
<td>Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates) #</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 111-2</td>
<td>English Usage</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Exemption is allowed from Chi. 131-2 based on an exemption test held in late August.
### Introductory Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 100</td>
<td>Introductory Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 150</td>
<td>Critical Thinking</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 120</td>
<td>Principles of Sociology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Departmental Core Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Philosophy of Social Welfare and Social Work</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 110</td>
<td>Social Welfare System and Social Services in Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional Requirement for All Students

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 131-2</td>
<td>Self-Understanding and Self-Development (2 hours per week, Pass/Fail)</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Electives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 180</td>
<td>Introduction to Chinese Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comp. 203</td>
<td>Computer Applications in Social Sciences</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Economics</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 100</td>
<td>General Chinese History</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jour. 160</td>
<td>Current Social Issues in Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law 110</td>
<td>Introduction to Law</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.E. 103</td>
<td>Physical Education</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.E. 104</td>
<td>Physical Education</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phil. 103</td>
<td>Introduction to Philosophy</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 103</td>
<td>Introduction to Anthropology</td>
<td>3 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 110</td>
<td>Understanding Capitalism</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Total number of credits for First Year courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Language Requirements</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Courses</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Departmental Core Requirements</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electives</td>
<td>5-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Second Year (Total number of credits required: 34-36)

Language Requirement
Eng. 211-2  English Writing .......................................................... 3 3

Departmental Core Requirements
S.W. 200  Theories and Methods in Working with Individuals .... 2 -
S.W. 210  Advanced Case Work ............................................ - 2
S.W. 220  Theories and Methods in Groups ................................ 2 -
S.W. 230  Advanced Group Work ............................................ - 2
S.W. 231-2  Human Development and Social Environment ....... 3 3
S.W. 240  Theories and Methods in Community Work ....... - 2 -
S.W. 250  Working with Community Groups ......................... - 2
S.W. 251-2  Social Work Research ........................................... 3 3

Electives
Chi. 251-2  Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates) ........... 1 1
Coun. 200  Theories and Systems in Counselling and
           Psychotherapy .......................................................... 3 -
Hist. 240  History of Hong Kong ............................................. (3) 3
Hist. 350  China & Europe in the Making of the Modern World.. - 3
Soc. 204  Cultures in the Contemporary World ...................... 3 -
Soc. 233  Contemporary Social Issues .................................... 3 -
Soc. 336  Love, Family and Kinship ..................................... 3 -
S.W. 260  Volunteerism and Community Services ................. - 3
S.W. 270  Social Work Practice in China .............................. 2 -

AND: All Electives listed under First Year

Total number of credits for Second Year courses
Language Requirement: 6
Departmental Core Requirements: 24  
Electives: 4-6  
Total: 34-36

Third Year (Total number of credits required: 38-39)

Departmental Core Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 300</td>
<td>Social Policy and Planning</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 310</td>
<td>Working with Marginal Youth</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 320</td>
<td>Ethics for Social Workers</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 330</td>
<td>Working with Family and Children</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 340</td>
<td>Working with the Aged</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 350</td>
<td>Programme Evaluation</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 351-2</td>
<td>Integrative Practice Seminar I &amp; II</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 360</td>
<td>Working with New Arrivals</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 361-2</td>
<td>Fieldwork I &amp; II</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 363</td>
<td>Fieldwork III (Summer Block Placement)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.W. 370</td>
<td>Law and Social Work</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Electives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 309</td>
<td>Human Resource Management</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 361-2</td>
<td>Advanced Putonghua (for Undergraduates)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coun. 210</td>
<td>Micro-Skills in Counselling and Psychotherapy</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psy. 390</td>
<td>Psychopathology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 337</td>
<td>Criminology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 371</td>
<td>Chinese Culture and Society</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 432</td>
<td>State and Society</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AND: All Electives listed under First and Second Years

Total number of credits for Third Year courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Departmental Core Requirements</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electives</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 30-33)

Departmental Core Requirements
S.W. 420 Residential Care for Young People with Adjustment Problems ........................................ 2
S.W. 430 Working with People with Intellectual Disabilities ................................................................. 2
S.W. 441-2 Honours Project .................................................................................................................. 2  2
S.W. 450 School Social Work ............................................................................................................. 2
S.W. 461-2 Integrative Practice Seminar III & IV .............................................................................. 2  2
S.W. 470 Social Work Practice in Mental Health ............................................................................... 2
S.W. 471-2 Fieldwork IV & V .......................................................................................................... 3  3
S.W. 480 Social Work Management ................................................................................................. 2

Electives
S.W. 410 Basic Skills in Family Therapy ......................................................................................... 3

AND: All electives listed under First, Second and Third Years

Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses
Departmental Core Requirements: 24
Electives: 6-9
Total: 30-33
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(BSW DEGREE PROGRAMME)

S.W. 100 Introduction to Philosophy of Social Welfare and Social Work

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course serves to help first year students gain basic general knowledge and understanding of the philosophy and concepts of social welfare and social work and build up a foundation for the pursuit of further studies in other areas of the social work discipline in subsequent years. Upon completion of this course, students should be able to know the origin and the historical development of social welfare and social work; to identify and analyse the relationship between theories and practice in the context of social welfare; to understand the philosophy, essential knowledge and core values of social work; to develop preliminarily their reflective competency to analyse vital relevant issues (including ethical issues, helping relationship etc) in social work practice; to be able to explain and evaluate the current and popular social work approaches and perspectives as well as examine critically the functions of social welfare and social work in a changing society, with special reference to Hong Kong and Mainland China.

S.W. 110 Social Welfare System and Social Services in Hong Kong

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course serves to help students gain a basic general understanding of the social welfare system as well as various types of
welfare services in Hong Kong. Students are expected to develop the ability to critically examine the effectiveness of current social welfare services and the role of the social work profession in meeting changing societal needs.

**S.W. 120 Principles of Sociology**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to introduce students to the sociological analysis of the structuring of various forms of human associations. The emphasis is on the scientific study of human relationships resulting from subjective meaningful interactions of our everyday living. This course will enable students to develop the sociological consciousness and imagination for the understanding and interpretation of everyday life; learn how to comprehend human associations by means of other than the imposition of moral judgments on others' action; and acquire the basic and essential concepts and principles of contemporary sociological frameworks as a foundation for further studies in social work and other social science courses.

**S.W. 131-2 Self Understanding and Self Development**  
2 Terms; Non-Credit Bearing

The course aims to enhance students' self understanding and self development from a whole person development perspective. Through the course, students may describe the importance of self-understanding and self-awareness in social work. They can explain the significance of interaction between individual and the social environment in the making of self. With experiential exercises and peer reviews, they can identify personal and professional strengths and
limitations and act positively to achieve their goals. The students may critically evaluate their personal development and enhance their self efficacy. In the end, they will be able to achieve better self management and use of self in the pursuit of a professional identity.

**S.W. 200 Theories and Methods in Working with Individuals**  
1 Term; 2 Credits

This course aims at equipping students with basic knowledge about the nature, dynamics and helping process of social casework, especially in relation to the generalist model. Four main themes including the ecological perspective, problem-solving, mutual aid, and empowerment are highlighted, with regard to dealing with different scenarios and service targets facing a wide range of problems and needs. Through the use of case studies, role-plays, and visits to service agencies, students are encouraged to reflect over the roles and skills of a social worker as well as the value dilemmas that may be encountered at different stages of intervention.

**S.W. 210 Advanced Case Work**  
1 Term; 2 Credits

This course aims at broadening the repertoire of social work interventions as students begin to take up fieldwork practice in the coming years, and with further knowledge about the application of specialized approaches to social work practice with individuals and families. Emphasis is placed upon the integration of various theoretical perspectives and skills into practice. Subsequently students can identify their own strengths and deficiencies as social work practitioners and be able to select interviewing techniques at the micro,
mezzo, and macro levels of intervention.

**S.W. 220 Theories and Methods in Groups**

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course aims at enabling students to learn how to make use of group process theories to achieve social work objectives and to become aware of when group processes are appropriate to the group task, what the outcome of different sorts of processes are, how members’ contribution determine the nature of the processes, how group leaders affect group processes, and how a group whose processes are ineffective may be helped to improve.

**S.W. 230 Advanced Group Work**

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course aims to help students understand the perspectives of growth and development in social group work practice, the functions and roles of social change, social control and mediation, and the most useful helping models of social group work practice.

**S.W. 231-2 Human Development and Social Environment**

2 Terms; 6 Credits

The course aims to help students describe the nature, importance, meaning and diversity of human growth and behaviour in social work practice and the major socio-cultural factors influencing human development. Through the course, students can explain the chronological study of the human life cycle and identify the characteristics, developmental tasks, hazards, psychosocial crisis and resolutions of each stage. They can analyse the needs and problems
of different age groups in various developmental stages and develop insight about the uniqueness of the individual in consideration of personality. Lastly, students can describe and explain the interplay between human beings and the socio-cultural environment in the whole development, and to enhance the abilities of students in casework and group work assessment and intervention.

**S.W. 240 Theories and Methods in Community Work**

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course aims to introduce the theory and practice of community work in the generalist perspective which covers the ecological perspective, problem-solving, mutual help and empowerment and their application to social work intervention on case, group and community intervention. It covers the topics on the logic of understanding "community work and you", social reality, encountering the change agents, delineating the community work models, means and ends, and the non-directive community development approach.

**S.W. 250 Working with Community Groups**

1 Term; 2 Credits

The aim of this course is to introduce students to different vulnerable groups at the local community level. This course will examine a range of intervention approaches pertinent to social services provided to selected target groups in Hong Kong.

**S.W. 251-2 Social Work Research**

2 Terms; 6 Credits

The course provides students with the basic knowledge and
skills of social research methods for their development as professional social workers. With the understanding of the methodological issues for conducting social research, they should be able to develop a critical awareness of the application of social research skills and the use of research findings in social work practice.

S.W. 260 Volunteerism and Community Services

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to train students to learn by serving as volunteers in community service. Students have an opportunity to learn basic knowledge in identifying hierarchy of needs of disadvantaged groups and the social problems that they encounter. Students learn to reflect on their own motivation to become volunteers. In preparation for conducting 8-10 hours of voluntary community service, they are required to learn some basic skills in communication, problem-solving and decision-making process and organization, planning and evaluation of programmes. Students also learn from case examples to identify competence in knowledge, skills and attitudes (KSA) to accomplish various tasks in the delivery of voluntary services. Students are arranged to perform voluntary service within an agency. They also experience teamwork, leadership, partnership and network in community liaison work advocacy and involvement in community care.

S.W. 270 Social Work Practice in China

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course aims to enable students to develop a basic understanding of current social work practice in China. Students learn to apply and reflect on various interventions in the Hong Kong and
mainland China contexts. Learning through online searching and interactive class discussion will be adopted.

**S.W. 300 Social Policy and Planning**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is an appreciation of the contribution of social policy formulation to the solution, control and amelioration of social issues in contemporary society. Students are expected to understand the nature and boundaries of social policy, and the concepts of welfare state and welfare society. They will learn the different aspects in the development of social policy models and the interaction of political, economic and social policies. It is hoped that at the end of the course they can extend their knowledge to the new patterns of social welfare policy shaped by the state, family and market.

**S.W. 310 Working with Marginal Youth**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of this course is to enhance the self-awareness of the students on the etiology of deviant behaviour of marginal youth and equip them to work with marginal youth competently. The course will focus on enabling students to develop the capacity to be reflective about the needs and problems of marginal youth and their own values with the goals of re-formulating their conception of and evaluating their own practice as social workers.

**S.W. 320 Ethics for Social Workers**

1 Term; 2 Credits

Upon completion of this course, the students should be able to
(1) critically reflect on issues of globalization in social work practice and ethical dilemmas in social work profession; (2) have awareness of indigenization of social work practice with Chinese culture; (3) enhance self-awareness and understanding of one’s personal self; (4) have ethical awareness and commitment to act ethically when facing social work ethical dilemmas and make sound professional judgments.

**S.W. 330 Working with Family and Children**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to prepare students for working in the fields of child welfare and family services. Upon completing this course, students will be able to describe the theoretical foundation of working with families and children and the historical development of family service in Hong Kong. Students are able to examine the various developmental stages of families as well as identify potential family crises, and be able to conduct family assessment and intervention. In addition, students can describe the existing service provisions for families and children in the local context and mobilize community resources in helping clients solve their family problems. The course provides students with knowledge and skills about handling various family dynamics and situations. Furthermore, students can critically analyse the welfare policy and issues concerning family services in Hong Kong, and advocate appropriately for policy reforms and improvement of existing service provision.

**S.W. 340 Working with the Aged**

1 Term; 2 Credits
This course explores the major aspects of the ageing process. Particular emphasis will be placed on the analysis of the future trends of policy issues related to the seniors in Hong Kong, and the knowledge, approaches and skills in working with the seniors. Upon completion of this course, the students should be able to understand the theoretical and health knowledge of ageing, the various social theories on ageing and implications on social work practice. The course will enable students to analyse the characteristics and needs of the senior population, to examine critically current policy issues and trends in service for the seniors, and to acquire social work methods and skills in working with the seniors and their carers.

**S.W. 350 Programme Evaluation**

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course is a continuation of S.W. 251-2 Social Work Research. The aim of this course is to introduce to students different designs of programme evaluation and their use for continuous quality improvement in social services. Upon completion of the course, students should be able to understand the contexts and roles of programme evaluation in social services; understand programme evaluability and use relevant programme evaluation designs to monitor social service deliveries; identify requirements in the planning, designing and managing of social service interventions for continuous quality improvement; appreciate different types of quality assurance mechanisms, and the use of evaluation results for social service quality management.
S.W. 351-2 Integrative Practice Seminar I & II
2 Terms; 4 Credits

This course aims to enable students to develop a basic understanding of social work practice theories and methods as these contribute to building a competent Generic Social Worker. Students learn to apply and reflect on various theories and interventions through discussion and reflection of the issues and challenges encountered during fieldwork practice.

S.W. 360 Working with New Arrivals
1 Term; 2 Credits

By using a structural perspective, this course helps students critically examine the ways new arrivals from the Mainland and ethnic minorities are marginalized. Students are expected to reflect on the roles and the desirability of current social services and polices in flourishing the life goodness of new arrivals and ethnic minorities.

S.W. 361-2 Fieldwork I & II
2 Terms; 8 Credits

S.W. 363 Fieldwork III (Summer Block Placement)
1 Term; 4 Credits

S.W. 370 Law and Social Work
1 Term; 3 Credits

The aim of this course is to equip students, who would be future social work practitioners and administrators, with basic legal knowledge that is pertinent to and useful for the service users they
serve. These involve laws pertaining to malfunctioning families, children in need of care and protection, juvenile delinquency, unprotected workers and consumers, the mentally incapable, those discriminated by reason of their gender, disability or family status etc. Aside from knowledge, students will also acquire basic skills in conducting legal research to enable them to access and use legal literature (in particular, statutes and case laws) so that they can better serve their service users.

**S.W. 410 Basic Skills in Family Therapy**

Prere: S.W. 330  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims at enabling student to practise the basic family therapy skills in assessment, planning and implementing intervention strategies. Upon completion of this course, students will be able to describe the history and theoretical foundations of family therapy. They will have acquired the theoretical frameworks and practice principles underlying the major approaches of family therapy. They can apply basic assessment and intervention skills of different family therapy approaches to different family typologies, clients and problems in the context of Hong Kong. Moreover, students can examine the applicability of different family therapies in Hong Kong. After finishing the course, students can identify their patterns and preferences in integrating these major approaches with their own personalized approaches to family therapy.

**S.W. 420 Residential Care for Young People with Adjustment Problems**

1 Term; 2 Credits
Students are expected to reflect on the roles and the responsiveness of the current spectrum of residential programmes in youth development and family care. Besides, they could understand the scope, theories and principles of residential care service. It is expected that students could apply the knowledge and skills on needs assessment, implement treatment programmes and work competently with young people with emotional and behavioural adjustment problems.

S.W. 430 Working with People with Intellectual Disabilities

1 Term; 2 Credits

The course aims to assist students understand the basic concepts as well as the scope of mental handicap/retardation rehabilitation. The updated models of service delivery for persons with intellectual disabilities are also under examination and discussion. It also aims to provide students with updated knowledge and relevant skills in working with the clients and their families.

S.W. 441-2 Honours Project

2 Terms; 4 Credits

This course aims to enable students to conduct an independent study on an issue identified from relevant social work practice. Students are required to apply concepts, research tools and techniques they have learnt to conduct their own study and write up their project reports. After completing this course, students will be able to demonstrate an understanding of relevant literature in the chosen topic area of study; to apply relevant research methodology and data analysing skills; and to demonstrate the ability to integrate
learning from different courses so that a better consolidation of reflection could be achieved on the chosen topic.

S.W. 450 School Social Work

This course aims to examine the nature of school social work service and have a general review on the recent service and policy development. In addition, the course will help students examine the roles of a school social worker and the school dynamics in a secondary school setting. The course will also critically discuss the differential use of intervention skills and strategies in working with different systems that a school social worker has to deal with, including individuals, families, school personnel, the community and the education system. The course also equips students with knowledge and skills in handling crisis and specific issues in schools.
S.W. 461-2 Integrative Practice Seminar III & IV

2 Terms; 4 Credits

This course aims to enable students to develop a basic understanding of social work practice as a Generalist Social Worker. Students learn to apply and reflect on various theories in the Hong Kong context through interactive discussion and sharing of ideas concerning issues and challenges encountered during fieldwork practice.

S.W. 470 Social Work Practice in Mental Health

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course aims at providing a basic understanding of the major mental health problems encountered by different age groups in a rehabilitation setting. Students are introduced to a range of clinical problems, government policies, service models and rehabilitation strategies to support families and those who suffer from mental illness.

S.W. 471-2 Fieldwork IV & V

2 Terms; 6 Credits

S.W. 480 Social Work Management

1 Term; 2 Credits

This course aims at training students to perform effectively in administrative/management roles in social service organizations. To this end, this course examines the theory and practice of administration within social welfare organizations. It further offers an introduction to selected administrative/management skills and techniques.
including organizational design and development, personnel development and management; and current issues in social welfare administration in Hong Kong will also be examined in this course.

Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of Social Work, please refer to their respective Departments for details.
Department of Sociology

Sociology is the objective study of social interaction as it is affected by the fact that people live in groups. Sociologists are concerned with investigating the structure of groups, organizations, and societies, and how these various structures influence social interaction. Consequently, the subject matter of sociology can range from the study of family life to mob behaviour, from religious cults to organized crime, from work to leisure, and from the study of social divisions created by racial prejudice to shared beliefs that form the basis for a common culture. As a result of this, the perspectives and research techniques used by sociologists are sufficiently wide-ranging that they can be applied to almost any area of social life.

Bachelor of Social Sciences

The Bachelor of Social Sciences with Honours in Sociology degree programme is designed so as to provide students with a solid grounding in basic sociological theory, research methods, and a variety of topics of interest to sociologists. Consequently, teaching and learning proceed along three lines, namely, along theoretical, methodological, and substantive lines. These three lines are equally emphasized, and within each critical analysis and application of existing knowledge are emphasized. The courses in each line are classified into compulsory and elective subjects.
The Degree programme has been designed to provide students with considerable choice and flexibility in selecting courses. This will enable students to put together a curriculum tailored to their individual interests/needs and achieve learning outcomes that suit their future career goals. The total number of credits required for graduation is 124. Over 60 percent of the credits are obtained from courses within the Department of Sociology. The remaining credits come from courses that cover such subjects as law, psychology, economics, cultural studies, business administration, information technology, and general education. The graduates of the Degree programme are well-balanced, mature, articulate, critical yet innovative individuals with a good understanding of Chinese and Western societies in an increasingly globalized world.

Sociology is an expanding field of study whose potential is increasingly being recognized by those who are responsible for the formation of social policy and the creation of social intervention programmes. Sociology graduates are competitive in the job market, and found in such areas as personnel management, market research, government service, banking, social welfare and education. They are also intellectually prepared to pursue further studies in a variety of post-graduate programmes.

**Master of Social Sciences**

The Master of Social Sciences (Transformation of Chinese Societies) is designed to explore the transformation of cultural practices and social values brought about by state and market. It is divided into two domains. One domain focuses on changing social
values and morality; how they are shaped by institutional transformation and how individual citizens adjust themselves within the social structure amid rapid and radical social change. The other domain considers how traditional cultural practices have been preserved, recycled or transformed in a process of commoditization and politicization. It also examines the popularization of consumerist activities and the relationship between culture and consumption.

The Master programme is especially suitable for cultural workers and community workers who would like to pursue better understanding of contemporary Chinese societies and their social dynamics. An in-depth understanding of the social transformation in Chinese societies can also be leveraged to enhance job performance in a wide variety of professions such as education, human resource management, non-governmental organizations, advertising and business administration.
Bachelor of Social Sciences (Hons.) in Sociology

Number of Credits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

First Year (Total number of credits required: 38)

**Compulsory Courses**

**Language Requirements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 101</td>
<td>First Year Chinese</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 111</td>
<td>English Usage</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ICT Requirement**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comp. 101</td>
<td>Introduction to Information Technology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introductory Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Sociology</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 103</td>
<td>Introduction to Anthropology</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 106</td>
<td>The Art of Reasoning</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 108</td>
<td>Introduction to Statistics</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Elective Courses** (choose at least 9 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Business</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 120</td>
<td>Principles and Practice of Management</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 113</td>
<td><em>Lun Yu</em></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 131</td>
<td>Elementary Putonghua (for Undergraduates)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 180</td>
<td>Introduction to Chinese Culture</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 100</td>
<td>Introduction to Economics</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 120</td>
<td>Introduction to Literature</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 140</td>
<td>Introduction to Translation</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 100</td>
<td>General Chinese History</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 120</td>
<td>Introduction to World History to 1500 A.D.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 130</td>
<td>Introduction to Historical Theories and Methods</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hist. 180</td>
<td>Introduction to the Study of the PRC</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Jour. 100    Introduction to Journalism & Mass Communication ...... 3 -
Jour. 120    Introduction to Political Science................................. 3
Jour. 170    Visual Communication........................................... (3) 3
Law 110      Introduction to Law.................................................. 3 -
P.E. 103      Physical Education .................................................. 2 -
P.E. 104      Physical Education .................................................. 2 -
Phil. 103     Introduction to Philosophy...................................... 3 -
Psy. 100      Introductory Psychology.......................................... 3 (3)
Psy. 110      Biological Bases of Behaviour.................................. 3 -
Soc. 160      Food and Society .................................................. 3 -
S.W. 100      Introduction to Philosophy of Social Welfare and
               Social Work ................................................................... 2 -

Total number of credits for First Year courses
Compulsory Courses:  29
Elective Courses:  9
Total:  38

Second Year (Total number of credits required: 35)

Compulsory Courses
Language Requirement
Eng. 211-2 English Writing ...................................................... 3 3

Introductory Courses
Soc. 205  Sociological Theory I .................................................... 3 -
Soc. 207  Sociological Theory II .................................................. 3 -
Soc. 221  Social Research Methods.............................................. 3 -
Soc. 221A Applied Quantitative Social Research Methods or...  3
Soc. 221B Applied Qualitative Social Research Methods........... (3)
### Sociology Elective Courses (choose 9 credits)
- Comp. 203 Computer Applications in Social Sciences ................. - 3
- Soc. 204 Cultures in the Contemporary World .......................... 3
- Soc. 231 Social Problems ....................................................... (3) 3
- Soc. 255 Philosophy through Film and Literature .................. - 3
- Soc. 257 Art and Society ................................................... - 3

### Complementary Elective Courses (choose 8 credits)
- Bus. 130 Principles of Marketing .............................................. 3 (3)
- Bus. 200 Business Organization and Management .................. 3 (3)
- Chi. 251-2 Applied Putonghua (for Undergraduates).............. 1 1
- Comp. 204 Web Page Development ........................................... 3 (3)
- Hist. 230 Study of Chinese Historical Sources and Materials ...... - 3
- Hist. 240 History of Hong Kong ............................................. 3 (3)
- Hist. 252 Globalization and China ........................................ 3
- Hist. 275 The Great World Wars ........................................... - 3
- Jour. 230 Technological Change & Human Communication ...... - 3
- Jour. 240 Introduction to Cultural Studies ............................... - 3
- Jour. 250 Introduction to Mass Media in China ....................... 3
- S.W. 260 Volunteerism and Community Services .................. 3 -

**AND: All Electives listed under First Year**

### Total number of credits for Second Year courses
- Compulsory Courses: 18
- Sociology Elective Courses: 9
- Complementary Elective Courses: 8
- Total: 35
Third Year (Total number of credits required: 30)

**Compulsory Courses**

**Sociology Courses**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 304</td>
<td>Advanced Research Methods</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 305</td>
<td>Class, Status and Power in Chinese Society</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 321</td>
<td>Economic Sociology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 371</td>
<td>Chinese Culture and Society</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sociology Elective Courses** (choose 12 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 300</td>
<td>Law and Society</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 331</td>
<td>Western Classical Social Thought</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc./Eng. 335</td>
<td>Popular Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 337</td>
<td>Criminology</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 338</td>
<td>Juvenile Delinquency</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 339</td>
<td>Sociology of Religion</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 340</td>
<td>Qualitative Social Research</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 341</td>
<td>Sociology of Development</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 356</td>
<td>Gender Relations</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 358</td>
<td>Poverty, Social Policy and Social Innovation</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 359</td>
<td>Self, Emotion and Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 362</td>
<td>Tourism and Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 403</td>
<td>Globalization and Inequality</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 433</td>
<td>Crime and Criminal Justice</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soc. 470</td>
<td>Internship</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complementary Elective Courses** (choose 6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bus. 250</td>
<td>Organizational Behaviour</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi. 361-2</td>
<td>Advanced Putonghua (for Undergraduates)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 233</td>
<td>The Economy of Hong Kong</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Econ. 323</td>
<td>The Economy of Contemporary China</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 305</td>
<td>Technoscience Culture</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng. 383</td>
<td>Persuasive Writing</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hist. 220  The Modern World ..................................................... 3
Hist. 241  From Colony to SAR: Reunification & Challenges in Contemporary Hong Kong ........................................ 3
Hist. 260  The History of Chinese Economy ................................ 3
Hist. 320  The Contemporary World ........................................ 3
Hist. 340  Economic History of Hong Kong since 1949 .............. 3
Hist. 370  The Developmental Experience of Modern Western Economic Powers: Study of Selected Cases ........ 3
PRA. 320  Public Relations Disciplines ..................................... 3
PRA. 330  Advertising Strategies and Design ............................ 3
Psy. 390  Psychopathology ....................................................... 3

AND: All Complementary Electives listed under Second Year

Total number of credits for Third Year courses
Compulsory Courses: 12
Sociology Elective Courses: 12
Complementary Elective Courses: 6
Total: 30

Fourth Year (Total number of credits required: 21)

Compulsory Courses
Sociology Courses
Soc. 400  Senior Seminar or .................................................. 3
Soc. 401  Honours Project ..................................................... (3)
Soc. 410  Sociology of Organizations ...................................... 3
Soc. 432  State and Society .................................................... 3

Sociology Elective Courses (choose 9 credits)
Soc. 333  Urban Sociology ................................................... 3
Soc. 341  Sociology of Development ...................................... 3
Soc. 361  The Road to Social Entrepreneurship ....................... 3
Soc. 405 Social Control ............................................................ 3
Soc. 420 Evaluation Research ................................................... 3
Soc. 430 Economic Reform and Social Transformation in Contemporary China ................................................. 3
Soc. 433 Crime and Criminal Justice .......................................... 3
Soc. 447 21st Century Capitalism ................................................. 3
Soc. 470 Sociology Internship ................................................... 3 (3)

Complementary Elective Courses (choose 3 credits)
Bus. 309 Human Resource Management ..................................... 3
Bus. 440 Industrial Relations and Labour Law ............................ 3
Econ. 346 Issues in Development Economics .............................. 3
Eng. 406 Literature, Culture and Ecological Ethics ...................... 3
Hist. 410 Republican China ...................................................... 3
Hist. 440 Hong Kong and the Pearl River Delta: Economic and Social Change since 1978 ........................................... 3
Hist. 450 China in the Contemporary World .............................. 3
Hist. 460 Intellectual History of Modern China .......................... 3
Hist. 462 The Making of Modern Japan ..................................... 3
Jour. 370 Mass Communication Law ................................. (3) 3

AND: All Complementary Electives listed under Second and Third Years

Total number of credits for Fourth Year courses
Compulsory Courses: 9
Sociology Elective Courses: 9
Complementary Elective Courses: 3
Total: 21
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(BSocSc DEGREE PROGRAMME)

Soc. 100 Introduction to Sociology
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course introduces students to the key concepts, methods, and theoretical perspectives used by sociologists to understand the world we live in. It aims to assist students in developing a sociological imagination, which will enable them to view their own lives within a larger social context. Topics covered include social interaction, social institutions, patterns of social inequality, and social change.

Soc. 103 Introduction to Anthropology
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is an exploration of broad ranging issues common to all human beings and the contributions of anthropology to understanding these issues from a cross-cultural perspective. The course begins with an introduction to the scope, theories, fields, and usefulness of the subject. Examples from different cultures, past and present, are used to illustrate the similarities and variations among human societies. The main branches of the subject, such as linguistic anthropology, economic anthropology, religious anthropology, political anthropology, psychological anthropology and applied anthropology are touched upon.
Soc. 106 The Art of Reasoning

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course enables students to master the fundamental principles of reasoning and argument in ordinary language. This includes a basic understanding of the skills of linguistic analysis, the nature of reasoning and techniques of formal reasoning which leads to the core part of elementary symbolic logic and the logical dimension of the scientific method.

Soc. 108 Introduction to Statistics

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course provides sociology students with training in the principles and application of statistics to the social sciences. Topics covered include: basic concepts of statistics; the measures of central tendency and dispersion; probability and sampling theories; bivariate measures of association and hypothesis testing. The meanings of statistics and statistical conclusions are stressed.

Soc. 160 Food and Society

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course explores food issues and foodways in various cultures from the perspective of anthropology. The course helps students to look at food as a social and cultural construction, not as something simply supplying nutrition. Students will grasp how to incorporate various anthropological theories and concepts, such as cultural interpretations, symbolism, identity, social change, religious taboo and ritual, and globalization and localization, into the study of food and the role that they play in culture.
Soc. 204 Cultures in the Contemporary World

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course investigates social life from a comparative perspective, enabling students to gain an understanding of the world around them. It illustrates cultural variations within Hong Kong, within Asia, and around the world in the context of rapid globalization. The course covers a variety of topics, such as ways of living, forms of exchange, social inequalities, social construction of gender, politics of gender, and globalization of culture. How did the process of globalization begin? Is cultural variation about to be annihilated in the face of cultural homogenization and “McDonaldization”? Or can we expect the contrary that local cultural differences will intensify?

Soc. 205 Sociological Theory I

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course is an introduction to classical sociological theorists. It aims to familiarize students with the works of important classical theorists such as Karl Marx, Emile Durkheim, Max Weber, and Georg Simmel. The course helps students understand the main ideas of these and other key sociologists. The course also contributes to developing student’s capacity for theoretical thinking and independent study in the field of sociological theory.

Soc. 207 Sociological Theory II

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with an overview of modern sociological theory emerging in the twentieth century. It is designed to help students better understand the core concepts and
major schools in modern sociological theory, and develop the student's capabilities for theoretical thinking and independent research in the field of sociological theory. This course also provides students with the basis for understanding the application of modern sociological theory to a variety of substantive areas of sociology, as well as helping them develop their skills in investigating and presenting theoretical issues.

**Soc. 221 Social Research Methods**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course introduces students to the basic steps in conducting social research, including problem formulation, problem conceptualization, measurement, sampling, data analysis, and data interpretation. It also examines both principles and techniques of research designs commonly used in sociology, such as survey research, field research, and experimental/quasi-experimental designs.

**Soc. 221A Applied Quantitative Social Research Methods**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course focuses on the concepts, techniques and application of quantitative social research methods, and will provide students with basic and advanced knowledge and skills of quantitative social research methods necessary for their development as sociologists. It is also designed to help prepare students to use quantitative research methods in their final year project if they so wish. Students will be exposed to a variety of quantitative methodologies including path analysis and multivariate regression models with latent
variables. This course adopts an experiential teaching and learning approach. Students will develop a critical awareness of the application of quantitative social research through discussion and application of topics including measurement, survey design, and computer-based data analysis.

**Soc. 221B Applied Qualitative Social Research Methods**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course introduces students to the essential qualitative research methods and skills including unobtrusive measures, documentary analysis, content analysis, online research, ethnographic investigation, in-depth interview, focus group interview, photovoice, and action research. This course provides students with the basic epistemological theories, practical strategies as well as computer skills to use the software NVivo 10 for conducting qualitative research. Students are given opportunities to conduct qualitative research in real settings.

**Soc. 231 Social Problems**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**

This course aims to provide students with a comprehensive understanding of the conceptual framework of social problems, and to appraise the various perspectives in studying and solving social problems. The course also critically reviews a selection of contemporary social problems at the individual, societal, and global levels.

**Soc. 255 Philosophy through Film and Literature**  
**1 Term; 3 Credits**
This course provides students with an introduction to seven areas of social life that have traditionally interested philosophers, namely, epistemology, ethics, religious experience, meaning of life, identity, free will, and love. Selected examples from film and literature are used to present these areas of interest in a vivid and compelling manner while enriching the student’s sociological imagination. This course is founded on the idea that images and themes found in film and novels provide an effective springboard for discussion and clarification of otherwise complex and abstract philosophical concepts. The course enables students to apply philosophical concepts both to their everyday lives and to substantive areas of sociology.

**Soc. 257 Art and Society**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to draw a general picture of the relationship between art and society. We will find, on the one hand, the ways in which social conditions shape our understanding of art as well as the self-understanding of artists. On the other hand, we will see how artists strive to engage the society with a view to changing it through their works.

**Soc. 300 Law and Society**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course provides students with a critical examination of the relationship between law and society, and draws from several disciplines including sociology, criminology, anthropology and history. It considers general theories and issues associated with the study of
law in society and attempts to answer such questions as: How do laws come into place? Does the law represent society's interest or the interests of particular groups? Why are some behaviours and actions legal in some cultures and at certain points in time but illegal in other cultures and at other points of time?

**Soc. 304 Advanced Research Methods**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to provide students with a deeper understanding of the methods and techniques used in both quantitative and qualitative social research. The first half of the course focuses on research techniques in quantitative data collection and analysis. Special attention is paid to research design, selection of an appropriate research method, sampling, questionnaire design, and statistical analysis. The second half of the course concentrates on the qualitative study of social interactions in natural settings. The collection and analysis of empirical information from such sources as first-person accounts, life histories interviews, observations, and biographical and autobiographical materials are discussed.

**Soc. 305 Class, Status and Power in Chinese Society**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course introduces students to one of the most important arenas of social inequality, namely, social class. It will cover topics such as key concepts and major theoretical perspectives in class analysis, the role or power in constructing and maintaining such inequality, and consequences of social inequalities on life chances.
and life styles. This course aims to promote a scholarly understanding of class that will help students think critically as they try to make sense of inequality in the world around them. A comparative approach will be adopted.

**Soc. 306 Social Stratification**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The course introduces students to the key sociological concepts and theories concerning social stratification. It aims to assist students in developing specific knowledge and analytic skills necessary to evaluate the sources, patterns, and consequences of social stratification systems in contemporary society. Inequalities in wealth, prestige and power among social groups are examined in depth through historical and cross-national comparisons.

**Soc. 321 Economic Sociology**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course provides a broader understanding of the social aspects of the economy in our society. It involves a sociological examination of the structure and organization of economic institutions, relations and networks that form the basis of our economic system. At the end of the course, students will gain an in-depth understanding of how economic activities are embedded in, conditioned, modified and determined by social relations, structures and values.

**Soc. 322 Sociology of Occupations and Professions**  
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course explores the social organization of work in contemporary society with emphasis on the development of occupations and professions. It covers occupational choice and socialization, bureaucracy and management in the workplace, managerialism and public service professions, professionalization, and technological changes. It provides students with a critical framework to make sense of current practices in occupations and professions.

**Soc. 331 Western Classical Social Thought**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course enables students to master the philosophical basis and development of western classical social thought. After completing this course, students will be familiar with the main philosophical sources of western classical social thought and the relevant issues and proposed answers that are considered as significant and influential in the field of western social philosophy.

**Soc. 333 Urban Sociology**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces students to a range of topics in urban sociology. It starts with the history of urban life and urban theories. It then proceeds to investigate the relationship between urban space and social life through analysing the spatial structure and social aspects of public space in local and global contexts. The second half of the course focuses on current issues around the making of livable and sustainable cities, including the study of social networks, urban problems, sustainability, redevelopment and globalization. By comparing the similarities or differences between Hong Kong and other...
global cities, students can make use of local and global cases to evaluate cities, communities, and their consequences.

**Soc. 334 Sociology of Deviance**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is a study of various forms of deviant behaviour and their social significance. Classical as well as contemporary theories on deviant behaviour are reviewed. A selection of deviant behaviours are also analysed, including substance dependence, murder and aggravated assaults, sexual deviance, robbery and organized crime. Local, national, and international situations are equally emphasized.

**Soc./Eng. 335 Popular Culture**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course provides students with an introduction to contemporary debates on how subjectivities and everyday practices of popular culture take shape in mass society. It also delineates the ways popular culture constitutes a common and thereby important part of our lives. By drawing upon consumer's culture, pop music, media and sports, advertisements, films, anime and comics, theme parks etc, this course endeavours to show to students that an informal consciousness of class, gender and race is essential to any understanding of the sociology of popular cultural practices, both in the West and in Hong Kong. Issues such as postmodernism, identity politics, technoscience and media will be brought forth to bear on popular cultural texts which are already parts of students’ literacies and practices.
Soc. 336 Love, Family and Kinship

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course adopts a comparative approach to examine how love is invented as an important component of marriage and what the different kinds of family and kinship systems are. This course examines what romantic love is and how the meaning of love has changed over time. It explores how passionate love, intimacy and commitment have become important components in companionate marriage and what challenges are facing modern marriage. Different approaches employed by anthropologists in analysing love, family and kinship structures, as well as related practices are discussed. Students are encouraged to critically evaluate these ideas and apply them to their own lives and experiences.

Soc. 337 Criminology

1 Term; 3 Credits

This is an introduction to the concept, nature, processes and theories of crime and its control systems in modern societies. Topics cover the conceptualization and typology of crimes and deviance, methodology of criminology, psychological theories, theories of under and over control, theories of culture, status and opportunity, the criminal justice system, and the treatment and prevention of crimes.

Soc. 338 Juvenile Delinquency

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course examines delinquency and youth crime in terms of its volume, trends, causes, and prevention both in Hong Kong and
internationally. Special attention is given to the juvenile justice system and related juvenile justice issues. The prediction, prevention, treatment and control of juvenile delinquency by social control agencies are examined relative to social policies needed to reduce its incidence. Topics include the administration of juvenile justice, causes of delinquency, types of delinquency, and the development of treatment and prevention programmes.

**Soc. 339 Sociology of Religion**  
1 Term; 3 Credits

Religious resurgence around the world in recent decades has prompted reconsideration of the proposition that religion declines as modernization progresses. What are the controversies over secularization? What are the implications and consequences of the shift towards rational scientific paradigm for the sociology of religion? This course explores the distinctive features of religion and examines the different ways of studying it. The first half of this course deals with theoretical perspectives. It discusses classical theories of religion articulated by Marx, Durkheim, and Weber, as well as contemporary theories such as rational choice theory. It addresses some methodological issues related to studying religion. The second half of this course deals with a range of substantive topics including individual religiosity, religious organizations and movements, fundamentalism, gender and religion, mysticism, and problems of rationality.

**Soc. 340 Qualitative Social Research**  
1 Term; 3 Credits
This course aims to introduce students to an important and widely used qualitative research method: ethnography. It enables students to get basic familiarity with the theoretical basis of ethnography and the process of designing an ethnographic study. The course will approach the main issues in fieldwork and data analysis based on ethnographic fieldwork. It will focus on two main data collection methods in ethnography: participant observation and qualitative interviewing. The instructor will teach students to use software Nvivo 10 to conduct qualitative data coding and analysis. Students are required to practise the techniques of data collection and data analysis through their own fieldwork. In addition, field ethics and a new way to conduct ethnographic research: virtual ethnography will be discussed.

**Soc. 341 Sociology of Development**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course introduces students to the key sociological concepts and theories concerning social transformation and development processes with a special focus on developing countries. It aims to assist students in developing specific knowledge and analytic skills necessary to explore various substantive development problems and issues faced by Third World countries. Topics covered include decolonization, neo-colonialism, industrialization, democratization, debt crisis and globalization.

**Soc. 356 Gender Relations**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces a series of gender issues through feminist critiques, history, cultural studies, political science and, above
all, sociological analysis. The first half of the course concentrates upon the gender structures, ideologies and practices from cultural, social, economic, daily and political dimensions. The second half of the course explores the nature of patriarchal system, the roots of women’s subordination, the gender negotiation process and feminist movements. Upon completion of this course, students could do feminist observation and critical research of the gender circumstance in the Chinese society they live.

**Soc. 357 Migration**

1 Term; 3 Credits

Migration has become a significant issue in the era of globalization. This course takes up migration, both international and internal, as the primary object of study and category of analysis. The course will give students some basic familiarity with major theories, issues and controversies of contemporary migration. It aims to stimulate students to reflect on and engage in critical analysis of the causes, mechanisms and social consequences of international migration, as well as internal migration in contemporary Chinese societies. This course has three components. First, it introduces basic concepts and major theories which explain international migration and main social issues/problems related to international migration. Second, it examines the internal migration in Mainland China. Last but not least, the course investigates migration issues related to Hong Kong society.

**Soc. 358 Poverty, Social Policy and Social Innovation**

1 Term; 3 Credits
This course enables students to explain and analyse one of the major social problems, i.e. poverty, and the idea of social innovation in the current debates on poverty alleviation. The course introduces a series of policy initiatives for poverty alleviation developed by the government, NGOs and the business sector. Innovative measures such as empowerment, microfinance, social entrepreneurship and corporate social responsibility will be discussed. Lastly, the course also addresses follow-up issues that sustain social innovation. These issues include the development of human capital (both hard skills and soft skills) and the complementary support of education policy.

**Soc. 359 Self, Emotion and Culture**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with basic knowledge of the nature of the human self and emotion, and how they interweave with each other in different cultures. It also aims to strengthen students’ understanding of Western civilization and the uniqueness of Chinese civilization. Students are invited to reflect on their own self-understanding and self-evaluation based on this comparative understanding of Western and Chinese civilization.
Soc. 361 The Road to Social Entrepreneurship
1 Term; 3 Credits

A social entrepreneur seeks out innovative ways to address community needs. The course begins by introducing social entrepreneurship and social enterprise through a series of lectures, case studies and key readings that will provide an overview the growing breadth and depth of social enterprises globally and locally. This is followed by onsite visits to successful social enterprises in Hong Kong and the adoption of a service learning approach that will enable students to begin to develop the skills demonstrated by successful social entrepreneurs and apply what they have learned in the classroom to real world situations. They will explore such topics as sources of funding, income generation, and characteristics of self-sustaining social enterprises.

Soc. 362 Tourism and Culture
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course is designed to introduce students various aspects of tourism, mainly focusing on the interrelation between tourism and culture from an anthropological perspective. The course will cover the origin, major theories, methodology and practice of the anthropology of tourism. The course will analyse tourism as a cultural phenomenon with complex meanings for both host and guest societies. Students will learn about the relationship among culture, society and tourism by examining the socio-cultural complexities implied in a changing world. Particular emphasis is placed on the socio-cultural dimension of travelling behaviour, cultural development, heritage preservation, community involvement, ethnic identity construction,
and commodification of both the tourist and the toured.

**Soc. 371 Chinese Culture and Society**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims at widening the horizon of students and enhancing their cultural competence. It introduces students to the social life and history of thought in traditional China to enable them to have a better understanding of Chinese culture and society. Discussions concentrate on the major social changes and the classical thought of China such as Confucianism, Daoism, religions and value orientations and how this has influenced peoples’ lives, both traditional and contemporary. Upon completion of this course, students should have acquired a deeper understanding of Chinese culture and society.

**Soc. 400 Senior Seminar**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This is a capstone course to assist students in consolidating and assimilating their course of study over the preceding three years. The seminar offers students the opportunity to pursue specific sociological topics in greater depth, and encourage them to discover linkages and connections between different areas of sociology or theoretical approaches. Overall, the course aims to familiarize students with the major issues currently debated in the field of sociological theory; and assist the further development of critical thinking.
Soc. 401 Honours Project  
1 Term; 3 Credits

The Honours Project is specifically designed to enable Final Year students to integrate the knowledge of sociology and social research methods they have learned over the preceding three years of study. Staff supervisors provide direction and guidance in defining the research project, writing a research proposal, collecting data, analysing evidence, and producing the final report. Students will develop the skills necessary to conduct social research and report their findings in an academic format.

Soc. 403 Globalization and Inequality  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to develop students' competence in critically examining the role that globalization plays in distribution of wealth and resources in the world. It discusses various concepts of globalization, theories of equality and theories of distributive justice. Students will be introduced to the ethical and political debates concerning the relations between globalization, global inequality and global justice.

Soc. 405 Social Control  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces students to some of the basic mechanisms that govern social interaction and maintain social order. Because we all live in a society, we must to some degree conform to the expectations of others and accept some limitations on our behaviour. External control mechanisms are obviously important but
equal attention must be paid to internal mechanism of control, which include such things as shared values, custom, culture and tradition. Law, regulations and formal rules are important control mechanisms, but things such as the family, community and group serve both as important alternatives to state-anchored social control and as first-line resources in the management of disputes and conflicts.

**Soc. 408 Sociology of Knowledge**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The course aims to provide students with a critical study of the social sources and social consequence of knowledge. It focuses on addressing classical and contemporary theories on exploring how social organization shapes both the content and structure of knowledge or how various social, cultural, political conditions shield people from truth. The general objective of this course is to examine the social role of information, facts, science, ideology and common-sense.

**Soc. 409 Collective Memory and Social Change**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course explains collective memory not as a static entity, but rather as an ongoing process of forgetting, remembering, encoding and reworking of the past. It examines how the past is recalled and understood via the categories and schemata of our own cultures. It also investigates how collective memories are conceptualized through a variety of means. Oral histories, narratives, public rituals, heritage, monuments, public space and capitalism will be an-
alysed to understand their role in shaping, reshaping, and maintaining memories within a community. Students are encouraged to take the case of Hong Kong to critically examine how people who had lived through the period of colonization and decolonization remember their collective past and how this collective memory has changed over time.

**Soc. 410 Sociology of Organizations**

*1 Term; 3 Credits*

This course aims to provide students with a deeper understanding of the nature of complex organizations in a modernized, industrialized and urbanized setting. In this context, organizations are viewed as structural entities as well as dynamic processes that exert immense influences on individuals, groups, institutions and societies in the areas of economic, political, social and even cultural development.

**Soc. 420 Evaluation Research**

*1 Term; 3 Credits*

The aim of this course is to equip students with the necessary research skills required to evaluate social programmes, which increasingly emphasize the importance of effectiveness and accountability. It introduces the students to different systematic evaluation research designs and their uses for continuous quality improvement of social programmes. After taking this course, it is anticipated that students will be able to effectively assess the outcomes of social programmes organized by non-government organizations, as well as public institutions. An experiential learning approach is used in
this course. Students are required to choose one specific method to conduct a social programme evaluation.

**Soc. 430 Economic Reform and Social Transformation in Contemporary China**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course takes the form of a research seminar to examine the social implications and consequences of economic reform in contemporary China. It applies sociological and anthropological theories to analyse the economic transition and social change in contemporary China. It sets economic development within a specific social/cultural context and concentrates on the dialectic relationship between economic reform and social reproduction. Topics include the revival of capitalism in socialist China, market transition debates, social stratification and market socialism, the wave of private entrepreneurship, work unit (danwei) and state-enterprise reform, industrialization of rural villages and urbanization, household registration and migrant workers, guanxi in business and decline of state power, as well as Hong Kong-China connections.

**Soc. 432 State and Society**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course seeks to provide a more inclusive analysis of what is a nation state and how nation states shape our cultures and societies. It examines the interplay between state and individuals through the study of a range of topics, including the rise of nationalism, the standardization of language, the use of rituals, the meaning
of public space, the significance of body and sports, and the creation of tourist sites and heritage in modern nation-states. Students are encouraged to take the case of Hong Kong to examine the ways through which the state has shaped our lives after Hong Kong reunified with China.

Soc. 433 Crime and Criminal Justice

1 Term; 3 Credits

The Hong Kong criminal justice system routinely processes thousands of criminal cases annually. This course provides an overview of the system and enables students to think critically about this enterprise. Students will explore the role that law enforcement agencies, criminal courts and corrections play in the administration of criminal justice. How effective is the criminal justice system in controlling crime? What is being done to improve its effectiveness? Can the police arrest all criminals? What factors influence our response to crime and criminals? Does punishment deter crime? What challenges will the criminal justice system face in the future? This course attempts to answer these and other questions.

Soc. 440 Collective Behaviour and Social Movements

1 Term; 3 Credits

"The philosophers have only interpreted the world, in various ways. The point, however, is to change it." (Karl Marx, 1845) This course aims at introducing students to sociological theories for social movement studies from Marxist and other critical paradigms. The course seeks to enhance students’ research experience and
skills through problem-based learning. As part of the course students will be required to decide on a research topic, and then design and conduct a small scale research project under the supervision of the course instructor.

**Soc. 441 Contemporary Social Theories**

1 Term; 3 Credits
This course aims to enhance students’ knowledge of the major trends, debates and issues in sociological theory from the mid 20th century onwards. Special attention is paid to the critical theories and the post-modern turns in the study of contemporary social world. The overall purpose of this course is to develop students’ intellectual capacity in applying the contemporary social theories, as well as evaluating their analytical utility creatively and critically.

**Soc. 445 Sociology of Entrepreneurship**

1 Term; 3 Credits
This course is designed to introduce students to the sociological perspective as it applies to entrepreneurship. Consequently, the first part of the course examines the ways in which sociologists have traditionally dealt with entrepreneurial activity, which includes focusing on the social characteristics of entrepreneurs and viewing entrepreneurial business enterprises as a strategy used by ethnic, racial and other marginalized minorities to circumvent discrimination in the workplace. The second part of the course moves away from this perspective to focus on the prevailing social, political and economic conditions that encourage entrepreneurial activity. This will involve
examining the factors that contribute in varying degrees to entrepre-
neurial activity and context in which entrepreneurship occurs.

**Soc. 447 21st Century Capitalism**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The financial tsunami reminds us once again the volatility of capitalism as a political-economic system. The aim of the course is to depict the internal logic of the system and how it has unfolded in reality. The course will first review some of the classic writings on capitalism authored by Marx, Schumpeter and Polanyi etc. It will then track the transformation of capitalism from its early stage to the latest incarnation. Our focuses will be on the globalization process of capitalism and the new crises it faces in the early 21st century.

**Soc. 470 Sociology Internship**

1 Term; 3 Credits

The Sociology Internship provides students with an opportunity to broaden their experience beyond the classroom and to apply their sociological knowledge, tools and problem solving skills in a real world setting. Internships help to prepare students for future employment through exposure to potential work situations, developing contacts, building resumes and the exploration of career goals. Internship placements may be in public or private sectors, and involve profit and nonprofit organizations. Internships provide students with an applied sociological experience while at the same time enhancing their marketability to future employers.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(SERVICE COURSES)

Soc. 107 Understanding Sociology  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course provides a concise introduction to sociology for non-major students and enables them to obtain a better understanding of human society. This course concentrates upon the key paradigms in sociology, the importance of culture and socialization, the dynamics of social interactions in everyday life, and various essential institutions of modern society.

Soc. 110 Understanding Capitalism  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces students to the basic features of capitalism as an economic, political and cultural system. It will first examine the characteristics of capitalism by comparing it to other preceding economic systems. This is followed by a brief discussion of the birth and evolution of capitalism. The bulk of the course will examine the current operation of the system and its implications for our lives and future human beings.

Soc. 150 Critical Thinking  
1 Term; 3 Credits

This is a service course for other departments whose students need an understanding of the basic ways of reasoning, through studying sentential logic, and the ways to avoid irrational reasoning
through studying informal fallacies. After completing this course, students will be able to apply what they have learnt to analysis and critique of the logical dimension of arguments on substantive issues.

**Soc. 208 Hong Kong Society and Culture**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to provide students with an introduction to Hong Kong society and culture with emphasis on features and issues related to the tensions between tradition and modernity in Chinese society. It starts with the population features and issues of Hong Kong and problems in understanding this modern city. It then focuses on exploring the meaning of Chinese tradition to Hong Kong people by examining the ethos of Chinese familism and its expression in some traditional art forms. The second half of the course will look into various social institutions of Hong Kong and examine the impact of modernity on the self-understanding of Hong Kong Chinese.

**Soc. 233 Contemporary Social Issues**

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course provides a critical introduction to social problems with special reference to Hong Kong. The course examines the essential sociological perspectives in the field of social problems. The specific social problems for study cover: inequality and poverty, marriage and divorce, social discriminations, youth issues such as substance abuse, sex and pregnancy, and suicide. The overall aim of this course is to identify the root causes of social problems with possible remedies.
Note: For the descriptions of courses not listed under the Department of Sociology, please refer to their respective Departments for details.
Master of Social Sciences (Transformation of Chinese Societies)

Programme Curriculum

Number of Credits

First Semester (Total number of credits: 12)
Foundation (Compulsory) Courses
Soc. 501 Theorizing Market and State ..................................... 3
Soc. 502 Critical Research Methodologies ............................... 3
Soc. 503 Contemporary China in Transition ............................. 3
1 elective from Domain 1 or 2 * ........................................... 3

Second Semester (Total number of credits: 15)
3 electives from Domain 1 or 2 * ......................................... 9
Soc. 513 Graduate Seminar ................................................... 6

* Elective Courses
Domain 1: Changing Social Values and Morality
Soc. 504 Individualization and the Family ............................... 3
Soc. 505 Religion and Market Economy ................................. 3
Soc. 506 Mobility, Migration and Inequality ............................ 3
Soc. 507 Civil Society and Citizenship .................................... 3

Domain 2: Politicizing and Commoditizing Cultures
Soc. 508 Collective Memories in Chinese Societies .................... 3
Soc. 509 Heritage, Governance and Nationalism ...................... 3
Soc. 510 Taste and Consumption .......................................... 3
Soc. 511 Tourism in Chinese Societies ................................... 3
Soc. 512 Special Topics ....................................................... 3

The total number of credits required for graduation is 27.
DESCRIPTION OF COURSES
(MSocSc PROGRAMME)

Soc. 501 Theorizing Market and State

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to deepen the students’ understanding of contemporary social theories so as to prepare them for engaging in the discussions concerning social and cultural transformation of Chinese societies. It focuses on the development of market and state as two major social institutions and their impact on contemporary social life. Students are encouraged to think about the following questions: In what ways do market and state have changed contemporary social life? Have imperatives of economics and politics, such as profitability and efficiency, displaced social values and morality as the basic principles of social cooperation? To what extent are social and cultural practices and even our self-understanding influenced by economic and political power? Furthermore, as the influence of market and state increases in this globalizing world, does it mean that it is more difficult for us to be aware of and critique their impact on our social life?

Soc. 502 Critical Research Methodologies

1 Term; 3 Credits

An in-depth examination of the ways in which critical research methodologies provide new knowledge and offer alternatives, through analysis of social, cultural, economic, political contexts in which research activity occurs. The critical research paradigm will be explored, to understand various perspectives and methods, and
to enhance its use in cross-cultural and comparative research. This course provides a review of the movement towards the decolonization of the Western model of research and the revitalization of indigenous research frameworks and methodologies. A number of methodological and conceptual issues that arise in cross-cultural research will be examined including the importance of adopting a culturally appropriate research methodology, the role of researcher, participation in the research process, and the nature of research-based knowledge. In so doing the course provides a critical analysis of Western research methods and both their histories in colonial practices as well as their potential usefulness and applications in the study of social phenomena.

**Soc. 503 Contemporary China in Transition**

*1 Term; 3 Credits*

This course explores and examines the changing social institutions and structural changes along with market transition in contemporary China. It focuses on the sociocultural implications and consequences of implementation of reform and open-door policy since the end of 1970s. This course will employ analysis instruments and theories drawn from social science researches of contemporary China to analyse mechanisms and institutions of social transformation under the penetration of market forces and economic mentality into every corner of the society. Suggested topics cover the revival of capitalism in socialist China, market transition debates, social stratification and market socialism, the wave of private entrepreneurship, the rise and fall of work unit (danwei), industrialization of rural villages and urbanization, changing household registration
system, role of guanxi in business and state power.

Soc. 504 Individualization and the Family

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces the concept of individualization and its relationship with the institutions of state and market. It examines the extent to which the shift in social relations from valuing interconnectedness to individual autonomy is found in the families of various Chinese societies. Changing demographic structure, gender expectations, conjugal ties, family ideals, sexuality morality, and children-parents relationships will be investigated. A comparative approach will be adopted to evaluate the process of individualization in these societies. Throughout the course, the diversity of the individual's actual living experiences in families will be discussed.

Soc. 505 Religion and Market Economy

1 Term; 3 Credits

Religious resurgence, especially in mainland China amidst economic restructuring in recent decades has prompted scholarly research on the relationship between religion and market in Chinese societies. The theories of secularization and religious economy developed in the west serve as conceptual tools for explaining Chinese religions. What are the methodological problems in the application of western paradigms for studying Chinese religions? How far do recent empirical studies in Chinese religions offer an adequate understanding of religious changes in modernizing Chinese societies? In what ways do the varieties of religious faith, including Buddhism, Daoism, Christianity, Confucianism, and Chinese popular religions,
transform contemporary social life and generate new understand-
ing of values and morality? How do emerging religiosities across
different Chinese societies shed light on questions about morality
and social order? These are some of the questions that this course
attempts to explore. Part one of this course will deal with theoretical
issues and perspectives in sociology of religion and the study of Chi-
nese religions. Part two will cover a wide range of religions in differ-
ent Chinese societies, with special attention to the impacts of market
economy and the changes in values and morality. Part three will en-
gage in reflections on Chinese religiosity and morality.

Soc. 506 Mobility, Migration and Inequality

1 Term; 3 Credits

Social mobility and migration are not only the results of social
transformations, but also reflect the major changes in social struc-
ture. This course takes up social mobility and migration in Chinese
societies as the primary objects of study and categories of analysis.
This course will give students some basic familiarity with key theo-
ries, concepts, and controversies of social mobility and migration. It
aims to stimulate students to reflect on and engage in critical analy-
sis of the causes, mechanisms, and social consequences of up-
ward/downward social mobility and international/internal migration
in contemporary Chinese societies. This course has three compo-
ents. First, it introduces basic concepts and major theories which
explain social stratification, social mobility, and migration. Second,
it examines upward and downward social mobility in Chinese socie-
ties. It investigates how class, gender, race/ethnicity, power, elites,
and poverty affect people’s social status and the opportunities of
social mobility. Third, the course investigates both international and internal migration issues in contemporary Chinese societies. It focuses on the causes and social consequences of migration. It will address the connections between mobility, migration, and social inequalities and compare migration patterns and mobility mechanism among Chinese societies.

Soc. 507 Civil Society and Citizenship

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course introduces students to the role of civil society in relation to the rising interest in the concept and meaning of citizenship in different Chinese regions. The first half of the Course outlines the main themes, concepts and debates for analysing the intricate interplay between civil society and citizenship. The second half provides selected Chinese cases from Mainland, Taiwan and Hong Kong for demonstrating the varying civic discourses and actions in the practical context and their impact on the socio-political formation of the Chinese world. The overall objective of this course is to offer students a comparative perspective and analytical skills for reflecting upon the rising Chinese civic activism from within and advancing the meaning of Chinese citizenship they live with.

Soc. 508 Collective Memories in Chinese Societies

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course examines how remembrance of the past is related to the self-understanding of ordinary people and their shared experiences in the present. It also investigates how narratives about the
past, both histories and memories, play an important role within nations, social movements, and personal lives. It interrogates how the past is created or displayed in images, stories, legends, oral histories, landscapes, places, films, architectures, foods, museums, memorials, commemorative practices. What are the social and political conditions of remembering and forgetting in various Chinese societies, such as China, Taiwan, and Hong Kong? How are colonial memories remembered? In what ways have traumatic events been remembered or forgotten and how do they help to shape identities?

Soc. 509 Heritage, Governance and Nationalism

1 Term; 3 Credits

This course aims to investigate heritage as a process of contestation which is defined, created, displayed and manipulated by various groups of people at different levels. Foucault’s theories on governmentality and power will also be adopted to analyse the role of heritage in the cultural policies of Hong Kong, China, Singapore and Taiwan. Through examining the contestations of heritage, the economic and political aspects of heritage will be explored. Students are encouraged to examine the ways through which people, market and state have shaped heritage in Hong Kong, China and Taiwan.

Soc. 510 Taste and Consumption

1 Term; 3 Credits

Sociologists see consumption to be a more complex matter than the buying and selling of goods. Rather, consumption can be
seen as a cultural practice which involves social interaction, communication, classification and competition. Moreover, the specific social world, especially the social class that consumers belong to, greatly influences how they perform in consumption behaviours. This course aims to provide students an opportunity to get exposure to recent academic debates about consumption cultures and practices, with a special emphasis on the interconnections between social class, tastes and consumption. Real cases and empirical studies in different Chinese societies will be adopted as illustration. Upon the completion of the course, students are expected to understand major academic theories about modern consumption cultures, and have the ability to apply those approaches to analyse preferences, choices and tastes in their everyday consumption experiences.

Soc. 511 Tourism in Chinese Societies

1 Term; 3 Credits

Tourism has become a popular leisure activity in transforming Chinese societies for the last three decades. Based on research output from anthropology, sociology and other disciplines, this course analyzes tourism as a social-cultural phenomenon with routinized behaviors and complex meanings for both host and guest societies. Students will learn about the relationship among culture, society and tourism by examining the social and cultural complexities implied in the changing world. Particular emphasis is placed on the social-cultural dimension of social policy, cultural development, heritage preservation, environmental protection, community involvement, ethnic identity construction, and commodification of both the tourist and the toured. With case studies, students will be introduced
to famous examples of different types of tourist destinations in order to understand the social-cultural changes related to tourism developmental challenge around Chinese societies, ranging from mainland China to Taiwan, Hong Kong and Macau.

**Soc. 512 Special Topics**

| 1 Term; 3 Credits |

This is a course offered either by an adjunct or visiting professor. It will tap on selected topics within his or her area of specialization to examine special interests or emerging issues. This course is intended to provide a more in-depth understanding of changing social values or cultural practices.

**Soc. 513 Graduate Seminar**

| 1 Term; 6 Credits |

In a globalizing world, cultures change in faster paces than ever before and there is no exception for the Chinese societies. How do significant economic and political changes in these societies transform the Chinese culture, and how do these cultural changes, in turn, transform the social values and our self-identity? This seminar will review major theoretical frameworks and advanced research works in sociology and anthropology. Students will apply theoretical knowledge to construct their own research projects through which they will study and evaluate how social and cultural transformations take place and interact with one another.

As a capstone course of the programme, this seminar will focus on providing students an opportunity to integrate what they have learnt from other courses in both domains of the programme. It will
be divided into two stages. The first stage consists of lectures and seminars which aim at helping the students to formulate an appropriate topic for an independent research project. In the second stage, students are required to finish the project under the supervision of the instructor with periodic individual consultations. Students might also be encouraged to carry out their research projects with the support from local institutions or non-government organizations insofar as it is relevant to their research project.